



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

### Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

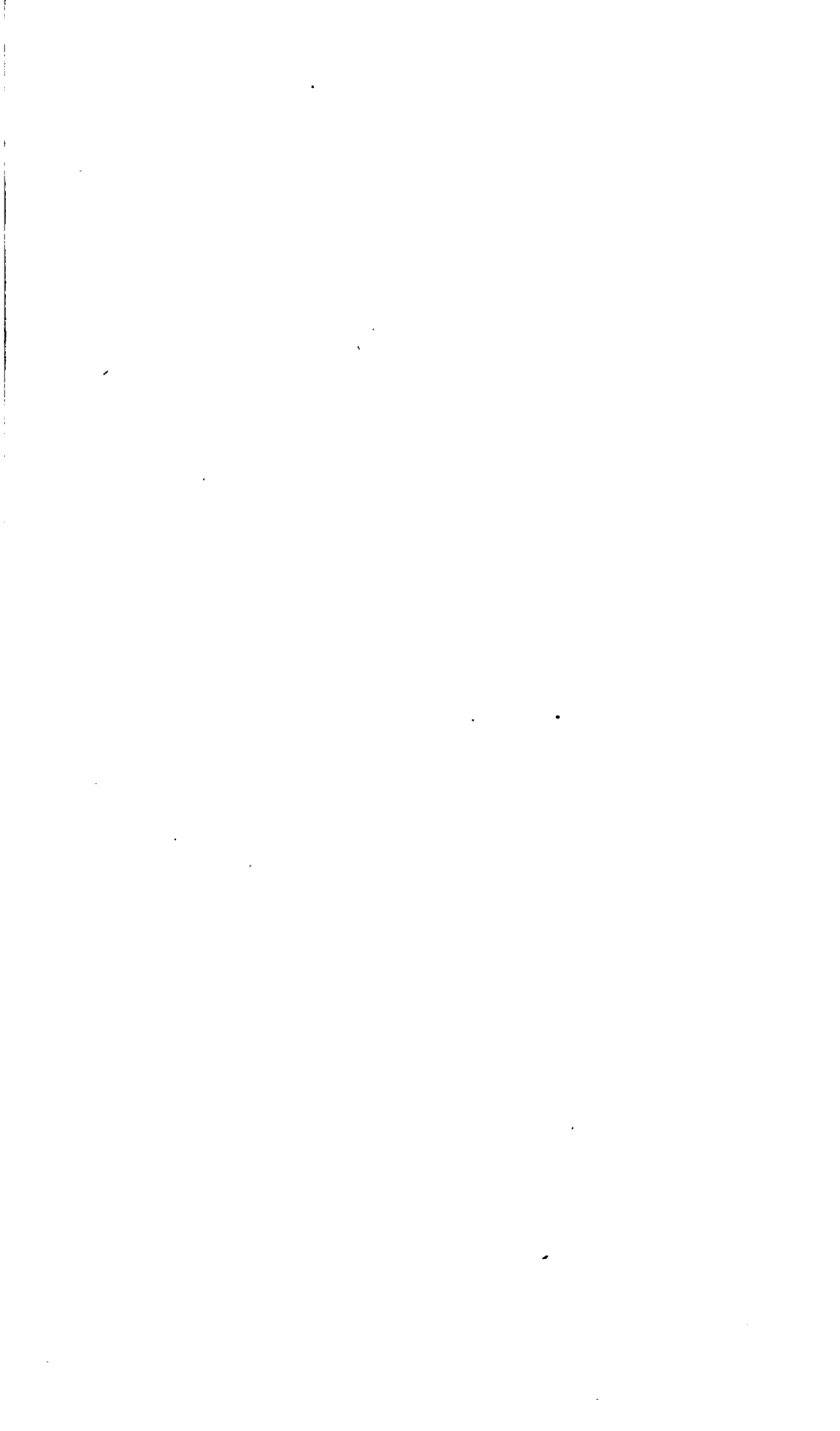
### About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>











GLF  
Gordo



Lieutenant General  
Prince **MENZIKOFF**

*(From an Original Painting in the possession of Her: Gordon of Durland's Esq.)*

THE  
HISTORY  
OF  
PETER the GREAT,  
EMPEROR of RUSSIA.

To which is prefixed, A short  
GENERAL HISTORY of the COUNTRY,  
FROM THE  
RISE of that MONARCHY:  
AND AN  
Account of the AUTHOR's Life.  
IN TWO VOLUMES.

8363 VOL. II.

---

By ALEXANDER GORDON of ACHINTOUL, Esq; several  
Years a Major-General in the CZAR's Service.

---

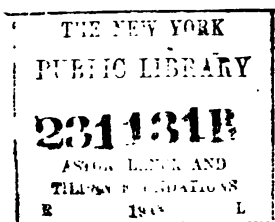
Illustrated with a Map of RUSSIA; the Heads of Czar PETER, Prince  
MENZKOFF and the AUTHOR, engraved from original Paintings.

---

ABERDEEN:

Printed by and for F. DOUGLASS and W. MURRAY:

Sold by C. HITCH and L. HAWES in *Paternoster Row*, London; by  
the Bookfellers of *Edinburgh* and *Glasgow*; and at *Aberdeen* by the  
said F. DOUGLASS and W. MURRAY at their Shops in the  
*Broadgate*. M, DCC, LV.



Entered in STATIONERS-HALL according  
to Act of Parliament.

# CONTENTS

OF THE

## SECOND VOLUME.

### B O O K IX.

**K**ING Augustus returns to Poland, and declares his renunciation null. King Stanislaus retires incognito. The Czar re-enters Poland. Meets with King Augustus at Thorn. Marches thence to Marienworder, where he has an interview with the King of Prussia, and enters into a new alliance: after which he passed through Koningsberg to Mittau; from which place he joined his army, which had already invested Riga. From Riga he goes to St. Petersburg, and from thence to Moscow, where he makes his magnificent triumphant entry. The Turks declare war against the Czar. The affair on the Pruth.

### B O O K X.

Starosta Grudzinsky makes an irruption into Poland. Surprizes General Bower's regiment at Pisdry: at last defeated by that General.

Feb. 11 1943  
Olliv.

*General. The Grand Seignior declares war for the third time against Russia. The King of Sweden absolutely refuses to return to his own dominions, but by an armed force. The Turks conclude a peace with the Czar. His expedition into Holstein; also into Finland. Abo taken. A battle at Pulcona. Rugen taken, likewise Stetin. The battle of Capla. Vasa taken; also Nyflot. The descent into Al-landt. The Czar's triumphant entry into St. Petersburg.*

## B O O K XI.

*The King of Sweden returns to his dominions: believed to be in concert with the Grand Seignior to attack Russia. The Czar makes a descent into Sweden. The imperial Princess is delivered of a son, and dies in a few days after. The Tartars in motion. New disorders in Poland. Cajaneberg taken. The Duke of Mechlenburgh's marriage with the Czar's niece. The Czar meets with the King of Prussia. Wismar surrenders. The Czar at Copenhagen: is at the head of four combined fleets. The descent into Schonen suspended. The Czar takes journey for Holland. Baron Gortz's intrigues discovered. The Czar's journey to France.*  
His

# C O N T E N T S.

v

*His return through Flanders into Holland: from thence through Germany to his own frontiers.*

## B O O K XII.

*The Czar establishes a chamber of justice to enquire into the disorders of the government. The Cuban Tartars make incursions into the kingdom of Casan. The Czarowich's flight. The Czar writes him a letter. The Czarowich's answer. The Czar writes him a second letter, having discovered the place of his retirement. The Czarowich answers it, and returns to Moscow. Formally renounces the succession. Questions proposed by the Czar. Answered by the Czarowich. The opinions of the clergy. A senate called, who judge and condemn the Czarowich. The Czar pardons him. His death.*

## B O O K XIII.

*Baron Gortz prevails with the King of Sweden to finish the treaty with the Czar. The plenipotentiaries meet at Allandt. The plan of the peace concerted betwixt Osterman and Gortz. The articles thereof. The affairs of Poland. The King of Sweden besieges Frederickshall: is killed. Baron Gortz arrested, and condemned. The negotiations*

*negotiations continued. The Czar publishes a manifesto on his expedition into Sweden. The Queen of Sweden publishes a counter-manifesto. The Russians burn and destroy all along the coast of Sweden. An account of the places ruined in this expedition. The Czar leaves Sweden. Mr. Wesselofsky presents a memorial to the court of Great Britain. Answered by King George as elector of Hanover; then as King of Great Britain. The Czar's discourse to the chamber of justice. The death of the Czarowich Peter.*

## B O O K XIV.

*The Czar causes make a harbour at Rogerwick. Undertakes the canal of Ladoga. The affairs of Poland. Preparations against Sweden. Causes present a memorial by his resident Bestuchoff to the court of Great Britain. Admiral Norris writes a letter to Prince Dolgoruky the Russian ambassador. His answer. The Czar refuses the mediation of Great Britain. The new King of Sweden sends an envoy to the Czar. The operations of the campaign. The Czar sends an envoy to Stockholm. The affairs of Holstein. The Czar enters into negotiations with Sweden, and accepts of the mediation of France. A congress appointed at Niestadt. A descent on Sweden.*

# C O N T E N T S.

vii

den. *A cessation of arms. Peace concluded at Nieftadt.*

## B O O K XV.

*The Czar's titles in foreign letters. Acknowledged Emperor by most of the powers in Europe, &c. His triumphant entry into Moscow. His speech concerning the succession. The state of affairs in Persia. Miriweys enters that kingdom. The Czar sends an ambassador into Persia. Marches at the head of a great army to support the Schah, Publishes a manifesto over Persia. The Schah demands assistance from his Czarish majesty. The campaign in Persia. The Turks take umbrage thereat. The Sultan publishes a manifesto. The Turks made easy by the means of the French ambassador at the Porte. The Emperor returns from Persia to St. Petersburg.*

## B O O K XVI.

*The Emperor puts to sea with a considerable fleet. Gives ships to several towns. The Duke of Holstein demands from Sweden the title of Royal Highness. The Emperor of Russia's pretensions on Denmark. An ambassador arrives from Persia. Baku surrenders to the Russian troops. The Turks conceive new jealousies. A new treaty*

## C O N T E N T S.

*treaty entered into. The coronation of the Empress Katharine at Moscow. The court returns to St. Petersburg. The Emperor's death. His character. The characters of some of the chief persons in his court.*

## A P P E N D I X.

*Description of St. Petersburg and Cronstat. Account of the revenues, taxes, forces, and dress of the Russians. Anecdotes of Peter the Great. Russian coins, weights and measures. Mr. Ilbrand's journey from Moscow to China.*

T H E

H I S T O R Y

O F

P E T E R the G R E A T,

EMPEROR of R U S S I A.

---

B O O K IX.

THE victory at *Pultawa* occasioned a very great change of affairs in *Poland*. King *Augustus* made preparations to return and take possession of his kingdom, having published a declaration, that his renouncing the crown in favour of *Stanislaus*, was, besides its being a force upon him, illegal in itself, seeing the republic had not consented thereto, nor had they been all assembled for that purpose; and as his renunciation, bearing date the 20th of *October* at *Pleskow*, was no more in force, he was resolved to return and take possession of a throne which belonged to him by the laws of GOD and man.

BOOK IX.

1709. King *Augustus* publishes a declaration on the change of affairs.

VOL. II.

A

As

BOOK IX. As he entered *Poland*, a great many senators went to welcome him: amongst others, several who had been engaged with King *Stanislaus*: he pardoned not only these, but all who repaired to him and abandoned that party.

is welcomed into Poland.

King *Stanislaus*, after General *Goltz* had beat his army, and General *Craffow* left him, went hither and thither incognito, till getting account of the King of *Sweden*'s defeat at *Pultawa*, he did not think himself safe in any part of *Poland*, but retired to the frontiers of *Hungary*; removing from place to place, accompanied only by a few servants; and at last went into *Turky*, where he was made prisoner, about the time the King of *Sweden* had been forced and taken by the *Janissaries* and *Tartars* at *Bender*.

*Stanislaus* prisoner in *Turky*.

The *Swedes* had no more footing in *Poland*, save only that Prince *Lubomirsky*, and *Starrosta Spitsky*, who had amongst the first espoused King *Stanislaus*'s interest, had not hitherto submitted; and that *Elbing* in the *Royal Prussia*, was garrisoned by a few *Swedes*.

The Czar having crossed the *Boristhenes*, on his return to *Poland*, marched through *Black-Russia* to *Uganow*, where General *Goltz* stood encamped with the troops under his command. Here he continued three days, reviewing them, and causing them perform

perform their exercise: from thence he Book  
 went to the *Vistula*, where, on board a flat IX.  
 bottomed vessel he had caused prepare for ~~~~~  
 that purpose, he went down the river to  
*Thorn*, causing his guards and dragoons  
 march by land. At this place, King Au- The Czar  
*gustus* came on board his vessel, where he and King  
 met with the Czar the first time, after his *Augustus*  
 treaty at *Altranstadt*: the two princes em- meet at  
*Thorn*,  
 braced one another, but the King was very  
 much out of countenance; which the Czar  
 remarking, bid him not mind the past, for  
 he knew very well that the King of *Sweden*  
 had much distressed and impoverished his  
 country, but now they had got full satisfac-  
 tion, and he believed he would not  
 return there on haste.

The Czar, 'tis true, had no reason to com-  
 plain, for besides the routing of his army  
 at *Pultarwa*, all the treasure the King of  
*Sweden* had raised in *Poland* and *Saxony*,  
 went into his Czarish majesty's coffers.

The Czar only continued a few days  
 with King *Augustus* at *Thorn*, then pur-  
 sued his march through *Polish Prussia* to  
*Marienworder*, where on the 26th of *October*  
 he met with the King of *Prussia*, with-  
 out any great formality: they dined toge-  
 ther next day at Prince *Menzekoff's* quar-  
 ters. On the 29th, Count *Fleming*, King  
*Augustus's* first minister and favourite, came

BOOK to treat of some affairs; where the Czar

IX. told him in few words, ' That as he had  
 done the whole work alone, being aban-  
 doned by all his allies, he was to have no  
 regard to former treaties, but was resol-  
 ved, not to divide the profits; that neither  
 the republic of *Poland*, nor King *Augu-*  
*stus* should have any share in the con-  
 quests he had already made in *Livonia*, or  
 was thereafter to make, being resolved to  
 annex the whole to the *Russian* empire.'

The Czar  
 resolves to  
 indemnify  
 himself for  
 his ex-  
 pence in  
 the war.

Whereupon, Count *Fleming* in name of  
 his master replied, ' That neither the King,  
 nor as he believed the republic of *Poland*,  
 had any thoughts of the conquest of *Livo-*  
*nia*; and that he on the King's part was  
 willing (if his Czarish majesty inclined)  
 to renounce all pretensions thereto: so  
 they entered into a new treaty, wherein the  
 King of *Prussia* had a concern. This King  
 likewise prevailed upon the Czar to evacuate  
*Courland*, and to raise no more contributi-  
 ons out of that country, the Duke being his  
 sister's son; who the year after came to  
*St. Petersburgh*, and there was married to  
 the Emperor's niece, *Anna Ioanowna*, af-  
 terwards Empress of *Russia*.

His niece  
 married  
 next year  
 to the  
 Duke of  
*Courland*.

On the 6th of *November*, the Czar part-  
 ed with his *Prussian* majesty, pursuing his  
 march through *Koningsberg* into *Courland*:  
 he arrived at *Mittau* the 17th, being met  
 without

without the town by the Land-marshal, the Book  
 magistrates and burghers, drawn up in arms IX.  
 as he passed, and every thing in the greatest  
 order. Having rested there a few days, on  
 the 26th, he joined his army which lay  
 encamped before *Riga*, commanded by  
 Marshal *Sheremetoff*, who had waited till  
 the coming up of the artillery, consisting of  
 sixty great guns and twenty-four mortars,  
 with ammunition in proportion.

As the *Russian* army advanced to invest *Riga* in-  
 this place, Major-general *Stackelberg*, with vested.  
 about two thousand of the *Swedish* cavalry,  
 came boldly up and attacked the *Russian* fore-  
 troops, commanded by Lieutenant-general  
*Bower*, who repulsed them with the loss of  
 fifty men killed, and about thirty more  
 wounded and taken prisoners. On the  
 28th, the Czar caused carry on the attacks  
 with all diligence; two batteries consisting  
 of fifteen guns each, and a bomb-battery of  
 sixteen mortars, playing without intermissi-  
 on: the place not being like to surrender  
 soon, the Czar took journey for *St. Peters-*  
*burgh*, leaving the direction of the siege to  
 Marshal *Sheremetoff*; who on the 6th of  
*December* published a declaration in his ma- A declara-  
 ster's name over all *Livonia*, offering them tion pub-  
 not only his protection, but to preserve their lished over  
 antient privileges. Whereupon the Governor all *Livonia*.  
 caused publish another in name of the King  
 of

BOOK of *Sweden*, ' exhorting the *Livonians* to

IX. ' continue in their duty, and not to put confidence in the unfaithful *Russians*; that he soon expected an army from *Sweden*, wherewith, he not only hoped to oblige them to abandon the siege, but to drive them out of the country; that besides, he had all the reason in the world to believe, that their master the King of *Sweden* was in the spring to enter *Poland* at the head of one hundred thousand *Turks*, which would soon change the face of affairs.'

The Governor of *Riga* publishes another.

By this time the town had been so bombarded, that a third part of the houses were destroyed: this unhappy place had not only the enemy without, but a most dangerous one within, the plague, raging to that degree, that it consumed numbers of the garrison and inhabitants; but the Governor would not think as yet of surrendering.

The Czar's triumphal entry into *Moscow*, 1710.

The Emperor left *St. Petersburg* in the beginning of *December*, and went to *Moscow*, where he made his public triumphant entry, after having continued some days at *Columska*, within four miles of the city, until all was prepared for that purpose.

This triumphant entry (little inferior to those of the antient *Romans*) was made on the first day of the new-year 1710. All the clergy and great men, in most sumptuous apparel, met his majesty a little without the first

first triumphal arch, whereof there were BOOK  
 seven, congratulating him on his great success, IX.  
 strowing artificial flowers in his way, and ~  
 carrying palms in their hands. The *Swedish*  
 generals and officers taken at *Lefno* and  
*Pultawa*, marched conform to their rank;  
 the *Swedes* having done the same at *Stock-*  
*holm*, by the *Russian* generals, and other  
 officers taken at the first affair before *Nar-*  
*va*. At this procession were carried; the ar-  
 tillery, standards, colours and waggons taken  
 from the *Swedes*, with the litter of *Charles*  
*XII.* found in the field of battle at *Pultawa*,  
 all broken to pieces by the cannon shot:  
 the Czar was on the same horse he rode  
 upon at that battle, attended by the generals  
 who had the greatest share in the success.  
 This day's solemnity ended with great re-  
 joicings over the whole city, and illumina-  
 tions the whole night long.

In the beginning of this year, the *Otto-*  
*man Porte* renewed and confirmed the thir-  
 ty years truce with *Russia*, notwithstanding  
 all the endeavours the King of *Sweden* used  
 to hinder it. The Porte  
renews the  
treaty with  
Russia.

On the 5th of *February*, the *British* Am-  
 bassador extraordinary Mr. *Whiteworth*, had  
 a public audience of the Czar, in a very  
 solemn manner, where all satisfaction was  
 given his majesty, for the affront his Amba-  
 ssador met with at *London* two years before.

But

BOOK But to return a little into *Poland*, about

IX. the end of *November*, General *Goltz* ordered Major-general *Gordon*, with a body of about four thousand foot and dragoons in-  
 General *Gordon* ordered to the frontiers of *Hungary*. to *Ziepts*, on the frontiers of *Hungary*, both to observe the King of *Sweden's* motions at *Bender*, and to reduce Prince *Lubomirsky* and *Starrosta Spitsky*, who had got together a body of betwixt five and six thousand horse and foot of different nations, in opposition to King *Augustus*, and the confederacy of *Sandomir*. General *Gordon* on the 17th of *January* early, forced the pass of *Ziepts* without losing a man, the enemy abandoning it on his approach: after which, he marched and took possession of *Caborwlia*, the chief town of the country; which the enemy also abandoned on his advance.  
 - Then he blocked up the castle, having no artillery wherewith to force it. After this, he marched with all his troops, leaving only three companies before the castle of *Ziepts*, and attacked the enemy on the 9th, near *Kysmark*, where the Prince, together with the horse, abandoned the foot, who had hardly fired the first fire, till they threw down their arms and begged for mercy. The Prince left the country and went to *Vienna*, and put himself under the protection of the Emperor; the horse retired to *Kysmark*. The General attacked them next day, but without

Reduces  
 Prince  
*Lubomirsky*, &c.

without much bloodshed, they surrendering Book  
 also at discretion: he caused take from IX.  
 them their standards, horses and arms, al-  
 lowing the men to go into *Poland*, as he  
 had done the foot before, not caring to  
 keep so many unnecessary mouths, who  
 were good for nothing, but to consume the  
 provisions; and Prince *Lubomirsky* having  
 but little in the country, where he had  
 played the master, or rather the tyrant for  
 some years before.

Much about this time Lieutenant-general General  
*Nosticz* took *Elbing* by surprize, being *Nosticz*  
 quartered about the town, with a body of takes *Elb-*  
 five thousand *Russians*, mostly foot: having prize.  
 prepared storming ladders, he marched and  
 attacked the town before day in three diffe-  
 rent places, being in good understanding  
 with the burghers. The commandant af-  
 ter a faint resistance, caused beat the cha-  
 made, and surrendered at discretion, very  
 few of his men being killed; and not a-  
 bove fifty of the *Russians* killed and wound-  
 ed. *Elbing* is a large town, not ill fortified,  
 and would take at least betwixt three and  
 four thousand men to garrison it right;  
 whereas the commandant had not above  
 five hundred. This town was taken on  
 the 7th of *February*, and was the only one  
 belonging to *Poland* the *Swedes* had kept  
 possession of.

BOOK The Czarowich having passed the winter

IX. at *Cracow*, visited in the month of *March* all the curiosities about the town; amongst others, the salt mines at *Borhnia* and *Vilitzky*; which are exceeding curious, being of a vast depth, where some hundreds of families live without scarcely ever seeing sun or moon. The salt is very good, as clear as crystal, and serves almost all *Poland*.

The salt  
mines near  
*Cracow*.

There were this year quartered in and about *Cracow*, about sixteen thousand foot and dragoons, under the command of General *Goltz*; but a misunderstanding happening betwixt him and Prince *Menze-koff* about the distribution of the quarters; on the 10th of *February*, one of his Czarish majesty's General-adjutants, brought an order from the Czar himself, to Major-general *Gordon*, to arrest General *Goltz* (who happened to be at that time in *Lubowlia* visiting the quarters) and to send him, under the guard of a Captain and fifty dragoons, to *Moscow*. Tho' this was a command the Major-general had no pleasure in, yet his Czarish majesty's orders must be obeyed; he therefore went forthwith, together with the Czar's General-adjutant, to General *Goltz*'s quarters, and intimated his orders. The General was exceedingly surprized at first; but then considering he had done nothing to deserve such treatment, he became easy,

easy, and after dinner set out from *Lubow-BOOK*  
*lia* to *Cracow*; and from thence the nearest IX.  
 way through *Poland* to *Moscow*, the com-  
 mand of the troops being conferred on  
 General *Janus*, a *German*, lately entered  
 into the service, having formerly command-  
 ed the troops of the circles of *Franconia*  
 and *Swabia*.

General *Goltz* being carried to *Moscow*,  
 and kept under strong confinement, in-  
 sisted to be tried by a court-martial; where-  
 upon, he was transported to *St. Petersburg*  
 in order thereto.

In the beginning of *July* a court was  
 held, of which the High-admiral, *Apraxin*,  
 was præses; who at the same time was in no  
 good understanding with Prince *Menzekoff*.  
 General *Goltz* was acquitted by the court,  
 there being not one single point of the  
 charge proved against him; which picqued  
*Menzekoff* to that degree, that he endea-  
 voured to prevail with the Czar to cause  
 hold another court-martial in the army,  
 where he (Prince *Menzekoff*) should preside.  
 General *Goltz* refused to submit to it; gi-  
 ving for reason, that he had been already  
 judged and acquitted; besides, that Prince  
*Menzekoff* (his enemy) could at no time  
 preside in a court to judge him: however  
 the Czar being diffculted betwixt a good  
 officer, and his favourite, continued *Goltz*

BOOK in arrest this whole year, until the ensuing,  
 IX. that the *Porte* had set up the horse-tail, and  
 ~~~~~ declared war against *Russia*.

General  
*Goltz*  
 leave the  
 Czar's ser-  
 vice.

The Czar finding that he might still have use for able commanders, sent for General *Goltz*, and presented him with a sword out of his own hand; ordering him at the same time to repair to his command. General *Goltz* humbly thanked his majesty for all his favours, told him his constitution was broke with fatigue, particularly, by this last long and hard confinement; and that he was resolved to serve no more. The Czar unwilling to put further hardship upon him, caused pay him up all his arrears, and conduct him safe to *Dantzick*.

I thought it not improper to mention this treatment General *Goltz* met with, to shew how much a favourite, when he is not a man of honour, may abuse his Prince's favour, so as to maltreat and even ruin his best servants: had it not been for the ensuing war with the *Turks*, 'tis hard to know but General *Goltz* might have been still kept under confinement, and probably, at last might have been sent to *Siberia*, where he would have ended his days in misery; as Lieutenant-general *Heyn* had been sent two years before. The General being at play with Prince *Menzekoff*, near *Smolensko*, of whom he had gained about three or four  
 thousand

thousand ducats: the Prince being picqued at his loss, gave abusive language to the General, who not being of an humour to bear it, took the Prince up, told him he was a gentleman, and did expect gentlemanly satisfaction; but all he got by it, was to be sent to *Siberia*, or some worse place, where he was never more heard of. I am convinced the Czar was not in the knowledge of many of his favourite's actions of this nature, being a Prince of more humanity and honour, than to have connived at them.

It is to be considered, that Lieutenant-general *Heyn* was not in the *Russian* service, but in that of *Poland*, under the Great-general of *Lithuania*.

In the great council held at *Warsaw* this year, betwixt the deputies of the republic and Prince *Dolgoruky*, the Czar's minister, several important points were tabled; amongst others, the two millions and an half the Czar himself had promised to the republic, and which had not been paid: another article was, that no more *Russian* troops should continue in *Poland*, than the twelve thousand stipulated. Then Prince *Dolgoruky*, the Czar's minister, insisted that Prince *Wiesnowitsky*, with many others of the senators, who had been engaged in the confederacy of *Warsaw*, should be proceeded against as enemies and traitors to the King  
and

BOOK and republic; for, that he could make it

IX. appear, that many of them as yet kept a  
 ~~~~~ correspondence with the enemy. Then the  
 deputies demanded that all the towns and  
 forts the *Russians* had made themselves ma-  
 sters of in *Volinia*, together with all the  
 artillery and ammunition found in these  
 places, should be restored to the republic:  
 to all which points and many more, no  
 direct answer being made, they came to no  
 conclusion.

As to the twelve thousand *Swedes* in  
*Pomerania*, the Czar was resolved to attack  
 them in their own country; but the Empe-  
 ror, *England* and *Holland*, foreseeing that if  
 the fire broke out in any part of *Germany*,  
 it would be of advantage to the *French*,  
 made remonstrances to the Czar, dissuading  
 him from putting that design in execution:  
 but the Czar judged it incumbent on him,  
 to attack his enemies where-ever he could  
 find them, unless the allies would engage  
 that the *Swedish* troops in *Pomerania*, should  
 not at any time hereafter, in any event,  
 march into *Poland*, nor disturb the King of  
*Denmark's* dominions adjoining to *Ger-*  
*many*; which being agreed to, the follow-  
 ing act of guarantee was entered into at the  
*Hague*.

Act of  
 guarantee

‘ That seeing his Imperial majesty, her  
 ‘ majesty the Queen of *Great Britain*, and  
 ‘ their

' their high mightinesses the States of *Hol-* B O O K  
 ' *land*, judge it of the greatest consequence to IX.  
 ' preserve the peace in and about the fron-  
 ' tiers of *Germany*, and having made re- <sup>between</sup>  
 ' monstrances to the powers at war in the <sup>the Czar</sup>  
 ' north for that effect; his Czarish majesty, <sup>and other</sup>  
 ' together with his allies' the kings of *Po-* <sup>powers</sup>  
 ' *land* and *Denmark*, had declared, that  
 ' they were resolved not to undertake any  
 ' thing that could disturb the peace of the  
 ' empire; provided always, that the *Swe-*  
 ' *dish* troops in *Pomerania* should no more re-  
 ' turn into *Poland*, nor attack the King of  
 ' *Denmark's* dominions, in and about the fron-  
 ' tiers of *Germany*; and that the above-  
 ' mentioned high allies and confederates  
 ' should guarantee the same; and further  
 ' desired, that the King of *Sweden's* extra-  
 ' ordinary envoy Mr. *Vanpalmquist*, should  
 ' acquaint the regency at *Stockholm*, and re-  
 ' ceive their orders thereupon; which be-  
 ' ing done, the said regency declared, that  
 ' it should not fail on the part of *Sweden*,  
 ' but that an exact neutrality should be pre-  
 ' served in the empire; that they promised  
 ' and undertook for *Sweden*, that the troops  
 ' in *Pomerania*, should neither return into  
 ' *Poland*, nor any way disturb the dutchies of  
 ' *Sleswick* nor *Jutland*; provided at the same  
 ' time the King of *Sweden* should be se-  
 ' cured that the *Danish* troops either on this  
 ' side

BOOK ' side the *Belts* or in *Jutland*, should not  
 IX, ' disturb nor molest the *Swedish* dominions  
 ~~~~~ ' in *Germany*, or on its frontiers: to which  
 ' all parties consented.' This act of neu-  
 trality was subscribed at the *Hague* the  
 21st of *March* 1710 by the plenipotential-  
 aries of all the powers concerned: there was  
 a great deal more, but all centered in what  
 is already said.

General  
*Gordon*  
 gets new  
 orders.

About the middle of *May* the *Russian*  
 troops in *Ziepts* received orders to march  
 into *Poland*, and to leave only a battalion  
 of foot, commanded by a Lieutenant-colon-  
 nel, in *Labowlia*. On the 13th of *June*,  
 they joined General *Janus*, incamped near  
*Limberg* where they continued until the  
 middle of *August*; about which time, Ma-  
 jor-general *Gordon* received orders from the  
 Czar to march down to *Royal-Prussia*, and  
 take further orders there from King *Augu-*  
*stus*: his body being augmented with two regi-  
 ments of foot and two of dragoons. He em-  
 barked with the foot, artillery, ammunition  
 and baggage, on large flat bottomed boats  
 on the *Vistula*, and caused the dragoons  
 march by land until they arrived at a small  
 town called *Meive*, within three leagues of  
*Marienburgh*, where King *Augustus* then  
 kept his court, and where he was com-  
 manded to continue till further orders. He  
 was necessitated to bring down the infantry  
 by

by water, to shun the plague, which raged **BOOK**  
universally over all *Poland*. IX.

The Czar being returned from *Moscow*, to St. *Petersburgh*, ordered the High-admiral *Apraxin*, with a body of eighteen thousand foot and dragoons, to march and besiege *Wiburg*, capital of *Carelia*, a notable sea-port, within the gulf of *Finland*. The Admiral came up before the town about the 3d of *April*; which he invested in form, and immediately attacked the suburbs that the besieged had set fire to; which the *Russians* extinguished, and lodged a battalion in the same: they also took two ships which lay in the bay before the town. The Czar with the greatest part of his fleet, came up before the place, both to block it up by sea, and to transport the great artillery, ammunition and provisions, which he had on board; the artillery, consisting of twenty-four great guns, twelve mortars, &c. The siege was carried on with vigour; so that sufficient breaches being made, the Governor not willing to stand an assault, surrendered on honourable terms. But, after the garrison had marched out, Admiral *Apraxin* caused arrest them, for these following reasons: *First*, The Governor of St. *Petersburgh*, having sent some years before, a light frigate, bearing a white flag, with letters to the prisoners at *Stockholm*, and to receive letters

The plague rages in *Poland*.

*Wiburg* surrenders.

BOOK from the *Swedes* for theirs in *Russia*, which

IX. had been often practised before; nevertheless, the *Swedes* made prize of the ship, tore to pieces the *Russian* flag, and used not the officer, who commanded the frigate, and ship's crew, with common civility. Secondly, That in the beginning of the war, they had arrested and made prisoner at *Stockholm* the *Russian* minister, and seized on his effects and papers, contrary to the custom of nations; that the Czar had relieved the *Swedish* minister Mr. *Kniperorona*, on his parole, that Prince *Chilkow* the Czar's minister should be relieved in exchange of him; which was not performed. Thirdly, That in the beginning of the war, all the *Russian* merchants both at *Narva*, *Stockholm*, and over all *Sweden*, were not only arrested, and their effects confiscated, but themselves forced to hard labour, on scanty diet, bad accommodation &c. so that many of them died.

The Admiral declared, that when the regency of *Sweden* had given satisfaction on these three grievances, the garrison should enjoy the benefit of the capitulation: at the same time, he allowed the sick, wounded, women and children to go to *Abo*, or where they inclined.

Marshal *Sheremetoff*, who had been all this time besieging *Riga*, the plague raging both

both in town and camp, to such a degree, BOOK IX.  
 that Lieutenant-general *Rentzel* and many more died of it; when he got accounts of the surrender of *Wiburg*, acquainted the Governor therewith, in hopes it would prevail with him to accept of terms: but he continued still obstinate, and did not offer to capitulate, until he was satisfied of the impossibility of obtaining succours: then on the 10th of July, the Czarina's birth-day, he entered into terms, there happening an accident, which contributed very much thereto, viz. the blowing up of a magazine of powder under a bastion of the town walls. The Marshal instead of diminishing their conditions, granted them more than they demanded: for, his Czarish majesty promised over and above, to restore to the gentry who should submit to his dominion, all the estates which had been taken from them by the chamber of reduction in *Charles* the XI's. time.

Of seven thousand men, or thereabout, whereof the garrison consisted at the beginning of the siege, scarce four thousand marched out, the half whereof were sick and wounded: all the *Livonians* of what quality soever were detained, not unvoluntarily, for they all with pleasure submitted to the Czar, and paid him homage in a most solemn

BOOK manner, which the Marshal received in name  
IX. of the Czar.

~ This Prince was expecting with impatience the accounts of the surrender, which he received with no small pleasure: he appointed a day of thanksgiving and publick rejoicing; after which Marshal *Sheremetoff* laid siege to the important fort *Dunamunde*, which surrendered within fourteen days, the plague having destroyed more people than the batteries. Then, the Emperor gave his orders to besiege *Pernaw*, then *Revel* and *Kexholm*: these sieges did not continue long, the plague raging so excessively, that *Pernaw* surrendered on the 21st of *August* and *Kexholm* on the 19th of *September*, so that nothing remained more but *Revel*; which also capitulated on the 10th of *October*, most part of the garrison and inhabitants being consumed by the plague. The Czar to engage still more and more the *Livonians*, after having restored to that nation their antient privileges, raised several regiments in that country, to be commanded by none but the gentry of the province.

*Revel,*  
*Pernaw*  
and *Kex-*  
*holm*, sur-  
rendered al-  
so.

King *Augustus* after the reduction of *Livonia* and *Carelia*, having all this time continued at *Marienburgh*, to show how far these events were agreeable to him, caused invite many of the *Polish* senators, foreign ministers, and General officers to an  
entertainment.

entertainment. He left *Marienburg* about Book  
 the middle of *October*, and repaired to the IX.  
 city of *Dantzick* where he passed the winter. ~~~~~  
 The auxiliary troops under Major-general *Gordon's* command, were assigned their quarters in and about *Quelchevia*, about thirty leagues above *Dantzick*, on the *Vistula*; Lieutenant-general *Nostits* together with his command, in the *Royal-Prussia*; the *Saxon* troops partly in *Lithuania*, (King *Augustus* being obliged to keep a body of twenty thousand foot and horse, near at hand to oppose the *Swedes*, in case they should be obliged by their King's orders to march out of *Pomerania* into *Poland*; for he was not consulted about their act of guarantee) the rest of the *Saxon* troops, together with General *Janus's* command, were quartered about *Cracow*, *Limberg* and on the frontiers of *Hungary*, to observe the motions of the King of *Sweden*, and the *Turks*.

The plague raged so excessively in *Poland* this year, that infinite numbers were carried off by it; particularly the *Poles*, whereof, not under an hundred thousand were consumed; and in *Courland*, there were not hands left to cut the down the harvest; but such good order was kept on the frontiers of *Russia*, that the plague never entered that country: owing also in a great measure

BOOK measure to the excessive cold. Very few  
 IX. of the *Russian* troops in *Poland* were infected,  
 ~~~~~ by reason that the *Russians* had always  
 a vast quantity of provisions in store, so that  
 they had no occasion to have any communication with the *Poles*.

The King of *Sweden* all this while was not idle at *Bender*; for, by his intrigues at the *Porte*, he brought matters so far, that the Sultan was at last prevailed with to break with *Russia*, and declare war against the Czar, confined his Ambassador Mr. *Ctulstoy* in the seven towers, and gave orders to the prime Visier to march with an army of two hundred thousand *Turks*, besides *Tartars*, which might amount to forty thousand more, against *Russia*.

The Sultan breaks with the Czar.  
 1711.

The Czar was no more in pain about the *Swedes*; the King of *Denmark* having attacked them in *Schonen*, tho' unsuccessfully, could nevertheless make sufficient diversion on that side: the Czar, I say, thought himself more than able to deal with the *Turks*; yet, to omit nothing, he wrote several letters to the Grand Seignior; whereby he made appear, that he had religiously observed the treaties betwixt him and the sublime *Porte*, and had given no occasion to the ensuing rupture; but these letters were never delivered to the Sultan, so that the Czar could get no return: then to make matters

His letters not delivered to the *Porte*.

matters more easy, he had gain'd the Hospodar B o o k  
 of *Muldavia*, who being of the *Greek* church, IX.  
 thought it more like a Christian, to subject  
 his country to a powerful monarch profess-  
 ing the same faith, whereby likewise, he  
 might become hereditary sovereign of *Mul-*  
*davia*, under the protection of the Czar,  
 than to hold it after the precarious man-  
 ner he did. On this account he joined the  
 Czar with all his force; and *Muldavia* be-  
 ing a plentiful country, his army could be  
 furnished with provisions and necessaries.  
 Accordingly, in the month of *March* 1711,  
 his Czarish majesty, having left the com-  
 mand of his armies in *Livonia* and *Carelia*  
 to Prince *Menzekoff*, marched with an army  
 of twenty four thousand foot, including his  
 guards, towards the frontiers of *Poland*,  
 where he was joined with what more foot  
 he had in that country, and with all his dra-  
 goons to the number of thirty thousand  
 more; where we shall leave him and return  
 a little into *Turky*.

He march-  
 es to the  
 frontiers  
 of Po-  
 land.

Mr. *Ctolstoy*, before the Grand Seignior  
 had determin'd on the war with *Russia*, spa-  
 red no means to thwart the *Swedish* negotia-  
 tions, and to engage the *Porte* to continue  
 in the interest of his master, by causing the  
 King of *Sweden* to remove out of the *Tur-*  
*kish* dominions; whose longer residence, he  
 said

BOOK said, would inevitably engage the *Porte* in  
IX. a dangerous war.

~ The Divan having taken this affair into their serious consideration, concluded, that the Grand Seignior was obliged to protect the King of *Sweden*, since that Prince had put himself under the powerful protection of the sublime *Porte*; but that it was contrary to the alcoran to declare war on that Prince's account, against the Czar of *Russia*, unless he had previously broke the peace concluded betwixt the sublime *Porte* and him, by having committed hostilities, or invaded any part of the Sultan's dominions; which did not as yet appear.

The King of *Sweden* mortified with the measures of the Divan.


This resolution put the King of *Sweden* out of all hopes, until the prime Visier *Ali-Bassa Zurlu* was deposed, disgraced, and banished, on the 15th of *June* 1710, on account of his having been corrupted by the Czar's minister, and other mal-practices; *Kiuparlisade* was declared prime Visier, who being of too regular a conduct, continued in that great office but a very few days till he was deposed, and sent back to his government in *Negropont*.

But *Baltazi Mehemet Bassa* having succeeded *Kiuparlisade*, the King of *Sweden* began to conceive better hopes, and omitted nothing that lay in his power to create a misunderstanding betwixt the two empires. It being the

practice, that when a new Visier is named, BOOK  
 all the foreign ministers, out of respect to IX.  
 his highness, demand an audience to wish  
 him joy; the *Russian* minister desiring to be  
 admitted first, was told, that of a long standing, <sup>between</sup>  
 the *French* minister, as being the antientest <sup>the Porte</sup>  
 ally of the *Porte*, was commonly admitted <sup>and Rus-</sup>  
 first, the *Porte* always giving the title of *sia*.  
 Emperor to the sovereigns of *France*.

The *Russian* Ambassador replied, that the  
 sovereigns of *France* were not considered  
 as Emperors amongst the rest of the sove-  
 reigns in *Europe*, but only as Kings; that  
 his master had a preferable title to Empe-  
 ror, as being sovereign of all *Russia*; be-  
 sides, that the rank was due to him as Am-  
 bassador extraordinary. This occasioned  
 the Divan, to look into the treaties conclud-  
 ed betwixt the *Ottoman Porte* and *Russia*;  
 whereby they found, that there had never  
 been given any other title to the sovereigns  
 of *Russia*, than that of Czar; so that he was  
 told that he should be admitted after the  
*French* Ambassador.

Mr. *Ctolstoy* entered a protestation, but  
 to no purpose, and caused at the same time  
 acquaint the prime Visier, that by these means  
 he should be deprived of the honour of see-  
 ing him. The *Poles*, *Tartars*, and all who  
 espoused the interest of the King of *Sweden*,  
 told the Visier, that the *Russian* Ambassa-

BOOK IX.  dor's proceedings in this point, were haughty and a despising of his person; which with the other complaints given in against the *Russians*, such as their pursuing the *Swedes* and *Poles* over the *Turkish* frontiers, made the *Porte* resolve to declare war against *Russia*, and to put the Ambassador in arrest.

The prime  
Visier at  
the head  
of a great  
army.

After which the prime Visier, having given the necessary orders, left *Constantinople* in the month of *March* 1711, to put himself at the head of the *Ottoman* army, which was assembled near *Adrianople*, from whence he decamped, directing his march towards the *Danube*.

The Czar  
marches  
contrary  
to the ad-  
vice of his  
generals.

The Czar after having got all his troops together, consisting of about fifty thousand foot and dragoons, directed his march from the frontiers of *Poland* to *Jassy* the capital of *Moldavia*, where he continued some days, taking measures with the *Hospodar* about provisions for the army. From *Jassy* he continued his march further down, on the north side of the river *Pruth*, where he arrived in the beginning of *June*.

But to do justice to the *Russian* generals, Marshal *Sheremetoff*, *Allart*, *Repnin* and *Galitzin*, they did all that lay in their power to dissuade the Czar from entering too far into the enemy's country; giving for reason, that it was always good and necessary, to secure a safe retreat; for they knew that  
the

the *Turks* and *Tartars* together, would o-Book  
 verpower them with numbers, and by that IX.  
 means make a retreat difficult. But the  
 Czar, depending on the goodness of his  
 troops, told them that there was no use for  
 a retreat, and so had no regard to their ad-  
 vice; but on the contrary, firmly believed,  
 that with that army, he was able to drive  
 the *Turks* to the gates of *Constantinople*.  
 Thus he marched along the river, over  
 which he allowed the enemy to pass, without  
 ever offering to dispute it, which was the  
 Czar's first oversight in this expedition; the  
 next was his trusting to the *Muldavians* and  
*Wallachians* for provisions. The *Russian*  
 armies formerly, when they marched against  
*Turks* and *Tartars*, carried always provisi-  
 ons during the whole campaign; which  
 was on this occasion neglected. The Czar  
 found this mistake when too late, for no  
 sooner had the *Turkish* army crossed the  
*Pruth*, than both *Muldavians* and *Wallachi-*  
*ans* carried all their provisions to them, and  
 minded the Czar no further; so that in a  
 little time we shall find this great Emperor  
 in as bad a situation, as the King of *Sweden*  
 had been in two years before at *Pultawa*.

The *Turks* advanced and attacked the  
*Russians* with their *Janissaries* and *Sphais*,  
 two different times, but were repulsed with  
 considerable loss; yet at last, provisions

The  
*Turks*  
 twice re-  
 pulsed.

BOOK beginning altogether to fail, there was no other remedy, but to hazard a decisive battle; wherein, if the Czar proved victorious all was well; but if not, he had ordered ten thousand of his best dragoons, together with his guards, all on horseback, to make his retreat as well as he could.

The Czar  
in great  
anxiety.

After matters were thus disposed, he retired to his tent to take a little rest, but could get none; his thoughts were so taken up with the desperate situation of his affairs, occasioned by his own forwardness. He reflected that his great endeavours in polishing his people, would be now rendered ineffectual; that the flower of his army, which in a manner from nothing, he had by his activity, prudence and management, brought upon a footing, nothing inferior to the best disciplined troops in *Europe*, together with himself, were all like to be swallowed up in a moment.

A pro-  
posal of  
bribing the  
prime Vi-  
sier.

In the mean time his principal generals, together with the Vice-chancellor *Shafferoff*, held a council amongst themselves, where the Czarina, being in the army, was present. It was advised to enter into a treaty with the prime Visier, and to offer him a sum of money, amounting to about two hundred thousand rubles, which they believed would dispose him to make up matters, by granting them such conditions,

as he was impowered to conclude peace u-Book  
 pon: after which, the Czarina went into IX.  
 the Czar's tent, (who was not asleep, thro' ~~~~~  
 anxiety and vexation) to make him the propo-  
 sal, which with some difficulty he went  
 into, despairing of success.

The *Turks* are great lovers of money,  
 and will venture a bow-string at any time,  
 for a round sum. *Shafferoff* was immedi-  
 ately dispatched to the Visier, with this pre-  
 sent in his hand, consisting of jewels, gold  
 and money. The Visier at first told him,  
 that the Czar with his army must surrender  
 themselves prisoners of war: *Shafferoff* as-  
 sured him, that the Czar his master was  
 fully determined at that instant to give him  
 battle, if the terms he came to offer were  
 refused. The Visier, having already attack-  
 ed the *Russians*, twice unsuccessfully, thought  
 it safer to make peace on the Sultan's terms,  
 and get this sum by the bargain, than trust  
 to the uncertainty of a battle. He caused  
 immediately proclaim a truce for some  
 hours, within which time the treaty was con- A treaty  
 cluded, and signed in very few articles: the conclud-  
 ed.  
 three chief ones were, *First*, That the Czar  
 should evacuate *Poland*, and allow none of his  
 troops on any pretext whatsoever, to conti-  
 nue longer in that kingdom; that he should  
 cause march his troops out of the southern  
 parts within a month, and out of the north-  
 ern

BOOK **IX.** ern within three months. In the second place, that he should restore *Asoph* to the Grand Seignior, with all the other forts betwixt it and the *Crimea*, viz. *Meius*, *Taganaroge*, &c. in the same condition they were when the Czar took them from the *Turks*, with artillery, ammunition, provisions, &c. *Thirdly*, To destroy the shipping at *Asoph*.

The King of *Sweden*, who had set out post from *Bender*, came not up to the *Turkish* camp until all was concluded, to his great misfortune, and no less mortification. He went straight to Mr. *Poniatofsky's* tent, who with a dismal countenance, told him what had happened; and that he had missed an opportunity, he was never like to have again in his power. From *Poniatofsky's* tent, he went in a rage to the prime Visier's, where he made a bustle for a while, but to no purpose: this Prince was infatuated, for had he been with the *Turks* from the beginning, and before they made their attacks on the *Russian* army, he with his few *Swedes* had given them so good example, that undoubtedly he would either have perished himself, or undone the enemy.

The  
Czar's error in de-  
spising the  
*Turks*.

*Peter* the Great, in this expedition, besides the oversights already mentioned, despised the *Turks* as much as *Charles XII.* had

had done the *Russians* some years before; BOOK IX.  
but without reason: for the *Turks* are no despicable people, but on the contrary, a  
valorous and bold nation; and, tho' they  
have not got into so good a method as  
the Christians, which is not to be wished  
they should; yet, having such numbers of  
men, they have often (when commantled  
by their Sultans in person, and sometimes  
by their Visiers, when men of experience)  
routed and cut to pieces the Christian ar-  
mies; so that no General could have been  
excused in committing such oversights. Ab-  
solute monarchs, who have only GOD to  
answer to, may do as they incline; tho' at  
the same time it is not in their power to  
screen themselves from the censure of the  
world.

This hitherto great and prudent Empe-  
ror, being on this occasion reduced to the  
last extremity, resolves to put all at stake;  
where, ten to one but he with his army  
(good as it was) had been destroyed.

But even in this, his good fortune (which  
had been his faithful companion all along)  
did not abandon him. The prime Visier  
being no soldier, but a weak interested man,  
struck up a peace stupidly with him for the  
sake of a bribe, not much exceeding fifty  
thousand pounds *Sterling*: the Czar would  
have given some millions to have got off at  
so

BOOK so easy a rate. This peace was owing (humanly speaking) to the ignorance and avarice of the prime Visier; but 'tis more reasonable to ascribe it to an over-ruling power, who changes the nature of things, and has relief at hand even in the most desperate circumstances; so that no cause, tho' ever so low, ought to be despaired of, provided it be founded upon honour and justice. If the prime Visier had been a man of more knowledge and experience, it would have been as easy for him on this occasion, to have made peace betwixt the Czar and the King of *Sweden*, as betwixt him and the Grand Seignior, and to have got all the *Swedish* provinces restored; nay, even his beloved *St. Petersburg* itself: for without all doubt, the Czar would have been obliged to go into all his terms, or have been with his whole army (which did not then consist of twenty-four thousand sound men) lost to all intents and purposes; having an army to deal with of no less than two hundred thousand *Turks* and *Tartars*.

After this treaty was signed, the *Russian* army being in a short time furnished, even by the *Turks* themselves, (who shewed them great humanity, allowing them provisions and all manner of necessaries) marched off, drums beating and colours flying: the Czar

The Czar  
marches  
back to the  
frontiers  
of *Poland*.

Czar did not halt much till he arrived on the Book  
 frontiers of *Poland*. The Hospodar of IX.  
*Wallachia*, Prince *Cantomir*, being obliged  
 to leave his own country went to *Russia*,  
 where he has continued in the Emperor's  
 service ever since. This peace was con-  
 cluded on the 21st of *July* 1711, the ho-  
 nour of which being wholly attributed to the  
 Czarina, *Catharine*, entirely gained her the  
 army, and the generality of the people.  
 With this the Czar was infinitely pleased,  
 tho' at the same time he knew very well  
 how matters had gone; for certainly the  
 generals, together with the Vice-chancellor  
*Shafferoff*, had been the main-springs that  
 directed the machine: they advanced their  
 money with the Czarina's jewels, which  
 struck the prime Visier blind all of a sud-  
 den.

The Czar, after his retreat from the  
*Pruth*, having got the length of the fron-  
 tiers of *Poland*, his first care was, after or-  
 dering his troops into quarters of refresh-  
 ment, to cause quickly recruit his regiments;  
 for this expedition had cost him upwards of  
 twenty-four thousand men.

Then he marched by *Warsaw* to *Elbing*,  
 at which place he arrived on the 12th of  
*September*; where he rested only a few  
 days; and after having ordered his troops  
 into their several quarters, continued his

BOOK journey towards *Carlesbath*, with a resolution

IX. to make use of the waters: then passed through *Dresden* the 20th, and the 22d arrived at the waters, which he used with

Negotiates affairs at *Carlesbath*.

tolerable good success. During his continuance at that place, he negotiated some affairs with the *Prussian* minister; after which he returned to *Dresden*, and from that he went to *Torgow* on the 28th of *October*, where the Queen of *Poland* had every thing prepared for celebrating the Czarowich's marriage with Princess *Charlotte Christine*, daughter to Duke *Louis Rudolph* of *Brunswick Wolfenbottle*, and sister to the Empress of *Germany*. Some days after the solemnity was over, the new married couple took their journey for *Wolfenbottle*, and the Czar passed through *Silesia* into the *Royal Prussia*, where he viewed the troops commanded by Lieutenant-general *Bower*. On the 8th of *November* he arrived at *Thorn*, where he with his whole court embarked for *Elbing*; at which place he was waited on, among others, by the famous Prince *Ragotsky*, who had come for that purpose from *Dantzick*: from *Elbing* he passed through *Koningsberg* and *Menil*, to *Riga*, where he celebrated the festival of the Apostle St. *Andrew*, patron of *Russia*: from *Riga* he went to *Revel*, where he continued some days, and ordered the fortifications to be repaired: from *Revel* he

Celebrates the festival of St. *Andrew* at *Riga*.

he continued his journey to St. *Peters-Book*  
*burgh*, his favourite town; at which place IX.  
he had resolved to continue some time, in  
order to take a view of the troops, the for-  
tifications, and the fleet.

The Czar being become peaceable possessor of *Livonia*, expressed a desire of being admitted amongst the princes of the empire of *Germany*, by virtue of that dutchy, and to have a minister at the dyet; but the princes of the empire opposed it, assigning amongst other reasons, that the Czar of *Russia* was too powerful a Prince to have any concern in the dyet of the empire.

His design of having a minister at the dyet of the empire opposed.

To return to *Turky*; the scene there was much changed: the King of *Sweden* by his intrigues, and theirs in his interest, had persuaded the Sultan that the Visier had betrayed both the *Ottoman* empire and the King, whom he had excluded out of the treaty, and that the Czar had not fulfilled the articles thereof. Hereupon the Sultan ordered the prime Visier to repair to *Constantinople*, which from time to time he delayed, being informed of the King of *Sweden's* practices against him; but at last he was obliged to obey, and as he came near *Constantinople*, the Sultan's orders were signified to him, viz. that he was deposed from his dignity, which he had enjoyed about a year: it was conferred on the Bassa, *Jussuf*,

New intrigues of the King of *Sweden* in *Turky*,

BOOK Aga of the *Janissaries*, himself sent into  
 IX. banishment to the island *Metalin*, and all  
 his goods confiscated.

After this, the King of *Sweden* began to recover hopes. The Cham of *Tartary* repaired to *Constantinople*, where he had frequent conferences with the Sultan, who resolved a-new to declare war against *Russia*, unless the Czar went immediately into the three following articles.

*First*, That the Czar should put in execution the articles of the treaty on the *Pruth*; that within a month's time he should evacuate *Poland*, and neither directly nor indirectly have any concern with the affairs of that kingdom.

*Secondly*, That the King of *Sweden* returning to his dominions, under what convoy the Sultan should think fit, the Czar should not order any of his troops into *Poland*, under any pretext whatsoever; for in that case he should be opposed by all the force of the *Ottoman* empire.

*Thirdly*, That the Czar should not concern himself any way with the *Polish Cossacks*, nor these under the Cham of *Tartary*; that in the terms of the peace, he should instantly demolish *Taganaroge* and restore *Asoph*.

The *Russian* hostages at the *Porte* opposed to these the three following articles:

*First*,

*First*, That the King of *Sweden* should instantly leave the *Turkish* dominions. Book IX.

*Secondly*, That the *Porte* should remain satisfied with what was already stipulated, in regard to the *Polish* and *Russian Cossacks*, in the *Ukraine*.

*Thirdly*, That if the King of *Sweden*, after his return to his dominions, should march an army into *Poland*, the *Porte* could not not take it amiss, that the Czar opposed force with force.

These demands with the answers, became the subject of a long negotiation, in which the ambassadors of *Great Britain* and *Holland* became mediators. This second treaty was concluded and signed on the 15th of *April* 1712.

The substance of it was this: ‘ That New articles agreed to between the Czar and the Porte,  
 ‘ since after the treaty of peace concluded  
 ‘ betwixt the sublime *Porte* and the Czar  
 ‘ of *Russia*, some differences had arisen;  
 ‘ both parties had agreed, that Sir *Robert Sutton* and Mr. *James Collier* ambassadors  
 ‘ from the Queen of *Great Britain*, and  
 ‘ the States-general of the united provinces,  
 ‘ residing at the *Ottoman Porte*, should be  
 ‘ desired to take on them the mediation of  
 ‘ these differences; and their excellencies  
 ‘ having consented thereto, the following  
 ‘ treaty is agreed to, after several conferences to that effect, betwixt us, the mi-  
 ‘ nisters

Bo o. k ' nisters and plenipotentiaries of his Czarish  
 IX. ' majesty, Baron *Peter Schafferoff* Vice-  
 ~~~~~ ' chancellor, and Count *Michael Shereme-*  
 ' *toff* Major-general, on the one part; and  
 ' his excellency *Jussuf Bassa*, prime Visier  
 ' to the Sultan, on the other part, in the  
 ' following articles.'

*First*, That thirty days after the date hereof, his Czarish majesty should cause all his troops withdraw out of the southern parts of *Poland*; and that three months time should be allowed to withdraw his troops from the more remote places of the kingdom; after which no *Russians* were to remain within the said dominions, under any pretext whatsoever; and that his Czarish majesty should in no shape meddle or concern himself with the *Polish* government; but in case the King of *Sweden* should enter with an army into *Poland*, with a view to attack *Russia*, that then the Czar might march with his army into *Poland* and attack his enemies, where after a battle fought, the *Swedes* should quit *Poland*, the *Russians* should equally at the same time evacuate that kingdom; in this case the *Porte* shall not look upon it as an infringement of the treaty.

*Secondly*, That when it should be thought proper that the King of *Sweden* should return to his dominions, the Grand Signior should

should be judge of his rout through what **BOOK** countries, without settling either the time, **IX.** or the manner, (they behaving as becometh) even tho' it were through some parts of *Russia*, and that the *Ottoman* troops, after having escorted the King into his own country, on their return should meet with no disturbance.

*Thirdly*, The *Cossacks* should content themselves with their antient limits, and make no encroachment on each other, nor on the *Tartars*; and that if any abuses be committed by either side, they should be duly punished.

*Fourthly*, As the town of *Asoph* is situated on the extremity of the *Ottoman* empire, and *Chircasky* on the extremity of *Russia*, no fort should be built by either side, and what is already built should be demolished; but that the Sultan, if he thinks fit, may repair the fort on the other side of the *Tanais*, opposite to *Asoph*, called *Petropolis*.

*Fifthly*, That as in the articles of peace on the *Pruth*, it was agreed that *Asoph* should be restored in the condition it was in when the Czar took it; and as at that time there were sixty brass guns, which were transported to *Moscow*, that these guns be restored or an equivalent for them.

*Sixthly*,

BOOK *Sixthly*, That in consequence of the said  
 IX. treaty, the fort *Caminick* and the castle built  
 ~~~~~ on the mouth of the *Samar*, remain demolished, and that neither side repair nor build any new fort in these places.

*Seventhly*, That this peace should continue during the space of twenty-five years, and be exactly observed by both parties. These articles were signed, in presence of the Ambassadors mediators, by *Jussuf Bassa*, the prime Visier for the Grand Seignior; and by *Peter Shafferoff*, and *Michael Sheremetoff*, plenipoentiaries for the Czar.

It may be easily supposed, that this treaty was heartily gone into by both sides, from the orders his Czarish majesty gave to his troops in *Volinia*, commanded by Marshal *Sheremetoff*, to leave *Poland* and retire into the *Ukraine*; and of those under General *Renn*, a part was ordered into *Livonia*, and the rest to march into *Pomerania*, where the Czar with the rest of the allies had undertaken the siege of *Stralsund*. The Sultan's satisfaction appeared in his letter to the Bassa of *Bender*, wherein he advances him to the charge of *Seraskier*, or Generalissimo over his troops in *Romellia* and *Ussu*, with orders for such a number under his command, to conduct the King of *Sweden* through *Poland* to his own dominions, acquainting him at the same time with the peace  
 last

last concluded; as also that he expected an Ambassador from *Poland*, with whom he was to confer on the quickest and safest way, for the King's passage.

This peace however continued but a few months; the King of *Sweden* with his partisans found means to excite a new revolution at the *Porte*, and to determine the Sultan to cause march a great force with him into *Poland*.

The King of Sweden raises a new stir at the *Porte*.

Prince *Menzekoff* was about this time in *Pomerania*, with a body of about fifteen thousand *Russians*, where he was to join the *Danish* and *Saxon* troops, in order to attack the island of *Rugen*, *Stralsund* and *Stetin*; which last was already invested, by eight thousand of the *Russian* troops. The Czar marched in person into *Pomerania* with a regiment of his guards; and as they were on the point of attacking *Rugen*, they got information, that General *Stenbuck* was landed in that island, with a body of ten thousand *Swedes*, which put a stop to that design. Then the Czar, leaving the command of his troops to King *Augustus*, went incognito to *Berlin*, where he conferred with the King of *Prussia*, who had all this time continued neuter: from *Berlin* he went to *Dresden*, and from that to *Carlesbath*, where he made use of the waters, as


The Czar goes incognito to *Berlin*.

BOOK he had done before, with success. During

IX. his absence, General *Stenbuck* marched from *Rugen* with the *Swedish* troops to *Stralsund*; where, after having exhorted the burghers, with two thousand men he left in said place, to stand to their defence in case they were attacked, he directed his march towards *Mecklinburgh*, where he took possession of *Rostok*. King *Augustus* with his *Saxon* and *Russian* troops marched after him, and took possession of *Gustraw*, and used all diligence to join the *Danish* troops, who had also marched from *Holstein* into *Mecklinburgh*, in order all of them together to fall upon the *Swedes*; but General *Stenbuck* to prevent their conjunction, marched and attacked the *Danes* at *Gadebush* the 14th of *December*, where he gave them a total overthrow, notwithstanding they were advantageously posted. After which the *Russian* and *Saxon* troops joined, in order to dispute *Stenbuck's* passage through *Pomerania* into *Poland*, which they judged would be his next design, in order to facilitate the King of *Sweden* and *Stanislaus* their return into *Poland*, to give life to their parties; but General *Stenbuck*, who had other views, marched towards *Jutland*, and quartered his troops in *Holstein*, according to the instructions

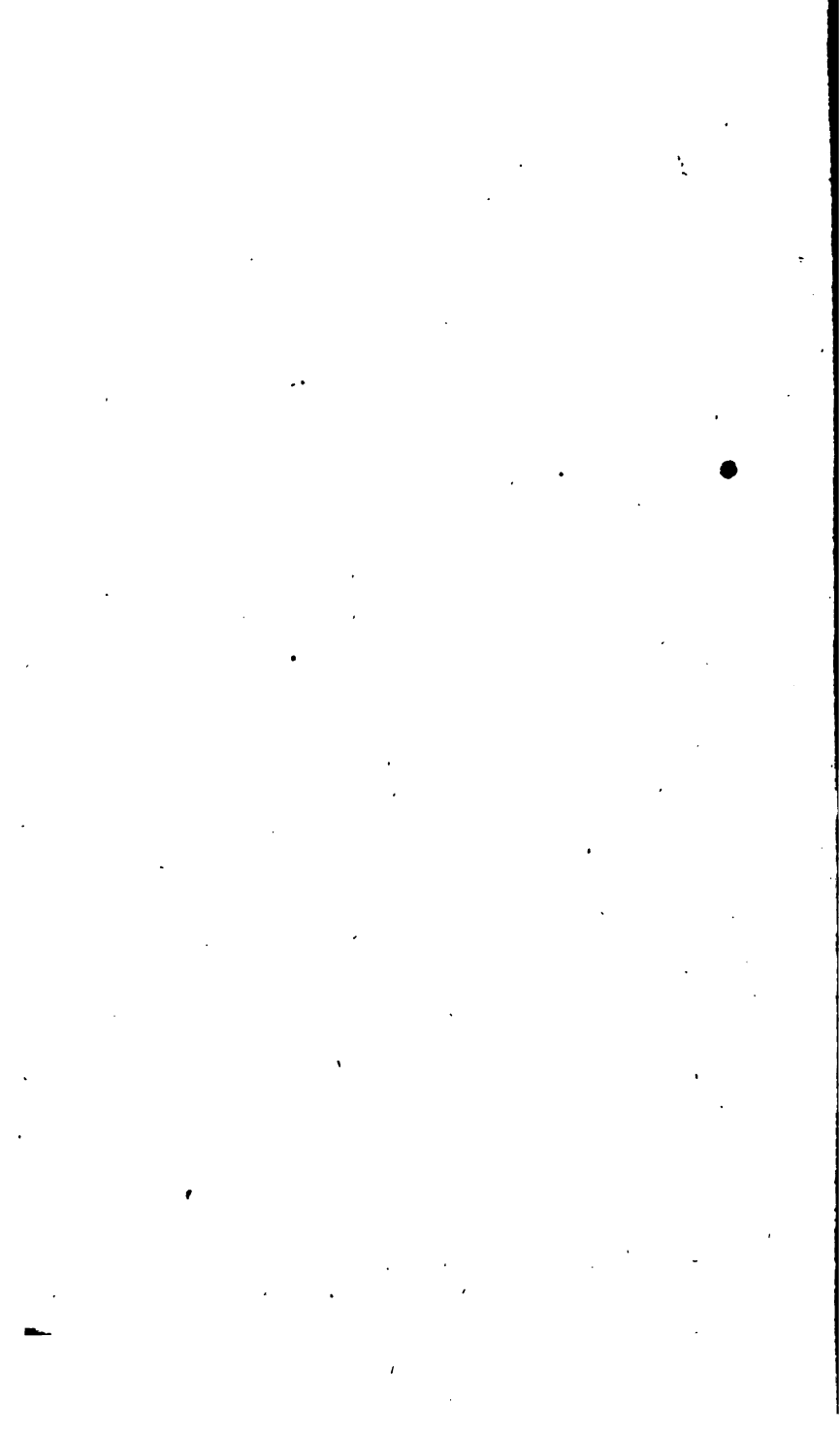
General  
*Stenbuck*  
beats the  
*Danes*.

he

he had received from the regency at **Book**  
*Stockholm*; where we shall leave him, and IX.  
return to *Turky*. 

*End of the Ninth Book.*

**THE**



T H E  
H I S T O R Y  
O F  
P E T E R the G R E A T,  
E M P E R O R of R U S S I A.

---

B O O K X.

**W**HILST the Czar was using his best endeavours to reduce the *Swedes*, and force them into a peace, affairs took a new turn in *Turky*. *Starosta Grudzinsky*, who had retired into the Grand Seignior's dominions after the King of *Sweden*, made an irruption into *Poland* at the head of five thousand *Poles*, adherents of King *Stanislaus*, with other troops of different nations, and pierced so far into the country without being discovered, that he came into the Woywodeship of *Kalisch*; where at *Pisdry*, he fell upon Lieutenant-general *Bower's* regiment, commanded by Colonel *Theodore*

BOOK  
X.

BOOK *Theodore Gordon*; and tho' the Colonel did

X. all that could be expected in opposing the

~~~~~ enemy, yet he was forced to retire with the loss of two thirds of his regiment.

*Grudzinsky*, puffed up with this success, still advances further into the country, which gave time to Lieutenant-general *Bower* who was then in *Pomerania*, to march with all diligence with two thousand dragoons into the Woywodeship of *Posin*, where he was joined by some standards from the Crown-general, which amounted in whole to three or four thousand men, and fell upon *Grudzinsky* at *Kruterstein*, where he overcame him, and so dispersed his corps, that he was forced, together with a few officers, to escape into *Silesia*. This expedition was concerted by the King of *Sweden*, to satisfy the Grand Seignior, that the *Russian* troops had not as yet fully evacuated *Poland*, agreeable to the last treaty of peace.

*Bower*  
beats  
*Grudzinsky*.

War declared again by the  
*Turks*.

Upon this the Grand Seignior, by the persuasion of the Cham of *Tartary*, and the King of *Sweden*'s agents at the *Porte*, declares war a-new against the *Russians*. The prime Visier *Jussuf Bassa* was deposed, and sent into exile to the island of *Rhodes*; *Soliman Bassa* was put in his place. The *Russian* Ambassador, with the other plenipotentiaries, were sent to the seven towers.

Some

Some time after, the Grand Seignior repaired to *Adrianople*, in order to assemble his troops, and to march in person at the head of his army. But before he proceeded further, he would have the King of *Sweden* to leave his dominions and return to his own, to make a diversion, by attacking the *Russians* on that quarter; for which end he sent a person of distinction to intimate his pleasure to him; but the King declared in positive terms, that he would not depart until he had an interview with the Sultan, that he might satisfy him of his good intentions towards the *Ottoman* empire, and to concert together of the properest measures to bring the Czar to reason. This answer was both ill reported, and as ill taken: those in the *Russian* interest gave the Sultan to understand, that the King of *Sweden* designed to give him the law in his own country; which obliged the Grand Seignior, by the advice of the Mufti, to send a second order, that the King of *Sweden* should instantly depart; and in case of refusal, to take his person by force, and bring him dead or alive to *Adrianople*.

The King of *Sweden*, tho' he had very soon accounts of this last order, did not believe that the *Turks* would go to that extremity; but he was mistaken, and as every body knows what happened to him at

*Bombard.*

The King  
of *Sweden*  
refuses to  
leave  
*Turky*.

BOOK X.

BOOK *Bender*\*, there is no use for enlarging upon

X. it here. If war had not been already declared, it had not been done at this time; but the *Turk* thought his honour concerned: nevertheless, the *Ottoman* ministry were rather for peace, and just about this time, got the accounts that the Czar had withdrawn his troops from *Elbing*, and restored it to *Poland*; which, with the King of *Sweden*'s obstinacy, so softened the Sultan, that he entered into negotiations with the *Russian* plenipotentiary, and settled matters as before, with little or no additions, or amendments: for all that the *Turks* had to object, was that the Czar still kept some troops in *Poland*, particularly at *Thorn* and *Elbing*; which were by this time evacuated.

Peace again with the Porte.

1713.

During these transactions, the Czar was intent on putting an end to matters with General Count *Stenbuck*, who had by this time burnt the town of *Altena*, so that he did not leave one single house unconsumed; to the ruin of the poor inhabitants. *Altena* was but a small unfortified place, lying within half a mile of *Hamburg*, but beginning

\* The King of *Sweden* would needs keep out his unfortified house, tho' attacked by ten thousand men, till at last they set fire to it, and surrounded him as he was making his escape from the flames. Some say, their commission was only to take him prisoner.

ginning to flourish; so that it is generally **Book** believed, Count *Stenbuck* received a considerable sum from the *Hamburghers*, who out of jealousy wanted to destroy that place. **X.** The Czar was at *Hamburgh*, where (having conferred with the *Danish* General, *Wonscholtz*, about the operations of the campaign) he caused distribute some thousands of rubles, amongst the most necessitous of the inhabitants of *Altena*; promising besides, to favour them in their commerce, not only in his ports in the *Baltick*, but also at *Archangel*.

The Czar being informed. that the *Swedish* General, Count *Stenbuck*, had fortified the bridge at *Holingstedt*, ordered Lieutenant-general *Bower* to march with four thousand foot and dragoons, and drive the enemy from the bridge; which *Bower* did so successfully, that after having obliged them to retire, he not only demolished the fortification, but ruined the bridge. General *Stenbuck* finding himself surrounded with enemies (the *Russians*, *Danes* and *Saxons*) began to repent of having entered so far into that country; and resolved to cross the *Eyder*, and return again into *Pomerania*: but being informed that the *Russian* army lay in his way, ready to dispute the passes with him, he altered that design, and entrenched his army to advantage, betwixt

BOOK *Frederickstadt* and *Tonningen*: but the Czar

X. being resolved to allow him no time, marched in person, at the head of eight thousand of his troops, attacked *Frederickstadt* on the 12th of *February*, and after a good resistance, he made himself master of the place, it being fortified only with a breast-work and pallisadoes. The *Russians* were twice repulsed, and lost a good many men; but at the third attack they carried the place, where they took four hundred prisoners, &c.

Count  
*Stenbuck*  
much  
straitned.

General *Stenbuck* finding himself reduced to the last extremity, and no ways able to give battle to the enemy, had no other recourse, but to persuade Colonel *Wolf* to give him possession of *Tonningen*, where he lay encamped under the cannon, expecting succours from *Sweden*; but in vain, the *Russians* and their allies had enclosed him, that he scarcely could get a courier sent to the regency at *Stockholm* to inform them of his situation.

About the end of *February*, the Czar parted with the King of *Denmark*, leaving him the command of his troops, after having concerted and agreed on the properest measures to reduce *Stenbuck*, without giving him battle, it not being possible for him to hold out any time for want of provisions; so that at last, he must be obliged, not only to surrender the town, but also himself,  
and

and all his troops prisoners at discretion. BOOK X.

The Czar after he had parted with the King of *Denmark*, took journey for *Hanover*, where he was magnificently received by his electoral highness, and his mother the old Princess *Sophia*, Electress-dowager. From *Hanover* he continued his rout towards *Wolfenbuttle*, and from that to *Shonhausen*; where he had an interview with the King of *Prussia*. There they settled the affairs concerning *Pomerania*; after which he continued his journey through *Dantzick*, *Koningsberg* and *Riga*: here the Empress *Catharine* was delivered of a daughter, called *Elisabeth-Marie*. As soon as the Empress had recovered her health and was able to travel, they all set forward together for *St. Petersburg*; where the Czar was no sooner arrived, than he ordered out a considerable number of ships, (about two hundred) with eight thousand land forces on board, to make a descent on the coast of *Finland*. They debarked at *Helsingfors*, in view of the *Swedish* General, *Lubecker*, who did not offer to hinder the descent, but retired in all haste to *Abo*, in order to oppose them at that place. The Czar, finding his troops insufficient to attack it, caused raise a breast-work about *Bergo*, (which he had ruined some years before)

Princess  
*Elisabeth*  
born.

A descent  
into *Fin-*  
*land*.

BOOK before) and erected a magazine, then returned to *St. Petersburg*, where he ordered eight thousand men more to be transported to the coast of *Finland*, in order to push his conquests in that province. After the debarkation of these new transports, Prince *Galitzin* put himself at the head of the whole, amounting to about sixteen thousand men, and marched straight for *Abo*, the capital of *Finland*. The Czar at the same time put to sea himself, with about twenty ships of force in order to attack a *Swedish* Squadron, which lay in the gulf, but so advantageously, that he did not think fit to attack it, but returned to join his land army, which had by this time attacked a pass at *Carelslo*, (defended by eight hundred *Swedes*) which they forced; then advanced towards *Abo*, which the enemy had abandoned, and found only in the place about thirty or forty old people, whom the Czar caused treat with all humanity. Besides a good quantity of provisions, there was a curious library, which his majesty caused transport to *St. Petersburg*. Prince *Galitzin* after having left a sufficient garrison in *Abo*, advanced with the army under his command, consisting of about fourteen thousand men, towards *Thavasthus*; which being no place of defence, the *Swedes* abandoned it, and retired to a strong post called

The  
*Swedes*  
abandon  
*Abo*.

called *Pulcona*; where a sharp encounter BOOK  
 happened. The *Swedish* body, consisting of X.  
 about seven thousand horse and foot, were  
 attacked by the *Russians* both in front and An en-  
 rear; till at last, after a good resistance they counter at  
 were beat, and forced to retire, with the *Pulcona.*  
 loss of nine hundred men killed, and two  
 hundred taken prisoners, with all their ar-  
 tillery and baggage. The *Russians* loss was  
 not inferior to that of the *Swedes*, who  
 retired towards *Tammerfort*. The Czar  
 caused fortify *Thavaasthus*, where he left a  
 garrison, in order to pursue his conquests  
 the ensuing campaign.

Matters went also pretty successfully in  
*Holstein* and *Pomerania*: the *Russian* troops  
 did not a little contribute to the reducing  
*Tonningen*, and General *Stenbuck*, who Count  
 surrendered as his Czarish majesty had fore- *Stenbuck*  
 told: the King of *Denmark* used him in the surrendered  
 beginning well, notwithstanding his burning at discre-  
 of *Altena*: he was allowed his full freedom tion.  
 in *Copenhagen*, on his parole neither to re-  
 turn to nor correspond with *Sweden*; but  
 being retaken afterwards, endeavouring to  
 make his escape, he was more narrowly  
 confined; by which he contracted a sick-  
 ness, whereof he died.

Prince *Menzekoff* who commanded the  
 troops in *Pomerania*, finding it impossible  
 to form the siege of *Stralsund*, without first  
 rendering

BOOK rendering himself master of the island of

X. *Rugen*; the *Russian* troops in conjunction with the *Danes* and *Saxons*, put that design luckily in execution on the 23d of *July*, with the loss of not above ten or twelve men: General *Duker* who was then on the island, retired in all haste to *Stralsund*.

*Stetin* as is already said, had been for some time invested, by a body of the *Russians*; but on the 14th of *September* the siege was carried on in form, and it did not surrender till the last of that month, General *Myerfeldt* not being able for want of provisions, to hold it out longer. Prince *Menzekoff* gave up this town to the King of *Prussia*, for a certain sum of money.

*Stetin* surrenders.

The siege of *Stralsund* was not undertaken, on account of the advanced season, but deferred till the ensuing campaign.

*Swedish Pomerania* being now sequestered in the King of *Prussia's* hands, and *Holstein* in the King of *Denmark's*, the allies had no more to do in the King of *Sweden's* dominions in *Germany*, but to retire with their troops. Prince *Menzekoff* did not care to depart empty handed, therefore threatened the town of *Hamburgh* with military execution, unless they payed him instantly down five hundreded thousand rix-dollars: they compounded for the half. The city of *Lubeck* being threatened in the like manner, pay-

Money raised from *Hamburgh*, &c

ed

ed an hundred thousand, and *Dantzick* an B O O K  
 hundred and fifty thousand, and all this on X.  
 frivolous pretences. After which he re-  
 turned to *St. Petersburg*, where he gave  
 his majesty the Czar an account of all that  
 had happened in his absence, wherewith he  
 was well satisfied; only the sequestration of  
*Pomerania* he would not ratify, since it tied  
 him up from returning any more into that  
 country; but having received a letter from  
 the King of *Prussia* on that subject, he be-  
 came easy, having had no design to keep  
 possession of any of these countries, but on-  
 ly marched his troops there to weaken his  
 enemy the King of *Sweden*, and force him  
 into a peace, in order to secure to himself  
 the conquests he had made in *Livonia*, &c.  
 besides he thought he could employ his  
 troops to better purposes in pursuing his con-  
 quests in *Finland*, and on the adjacent coun-  
 tries of *Sweden*.

The Emperor of *Germany*, together with  
 the other powers interested in the wars of  
 the north, had appointed a congress to be  
 held at *Brunswick*, whether the regency at  
*Stockholm* had agreed to send plenipotenti-  
 aries to treat of a general peace; but the pro-  
 ject vanished: for tho' several of the powers  
 had named their ambassadors, and some of  
 them had actually repaired to the said town,  
 yet all of them not meeting, there were no  
 conferences

ferences held. The Czar that wished for  
 X. nothing more than to conclude a solid peace,  
 ~~~~~ which might assure to him the possession of his  
 conquests, foresaw with regret the little success that must attend so important a project: and now judged his pursuing the war with vigour, was the only means to come at a good peace; so that he omitted nothing during the winter to enter early into the campaign; and follow out his designs on *Finland*, &c.

Prince  
*Galitzin*  
 attacks  
 and beats  
*Arnfelt*.

Prince *Galitzin* being informed that General *Arnfelt* stood intrenched near to *Vasa*, marched with the troops under his command, (consisting of about fifteen thousand foot and dragoons) and attacked the *Swedish* General, whose body consisted of about eight thousand men, regular troops and militia. Tho' the *Russians* attacked with vigour, they were as warmly received and even repulsed; but on the second attack, the *Swedes* were put in disorder, and routed; *Arnfelt* not being able to make the militia stand longer to it, which occasioned the loss of this battle sooner than it would have been, if the *Swedish* troops had been all equally good. The *Swedes* had upwards of a thousand men killed, and five hundred taken prisoners; the *Russians* lost near two thousand killed and wounded: this battle gained all *Finland* to the Czar. The town of  
*Vasa*

*Vasa* immediately surrendered. The Czar Book after this battle published a manifesto, wherein he declared that it was the King of *Sweden's* obstinacy, in rejecting all proposals of peace, that made him continue these hostilities, much against his inclination. X.

About this time the Governor of *Wiburgh* marched with fifteen hundred foot and dragoons, and made himself master of the island *Malin*; after which he attacked *Ny-slot*, wherein was a *Swedish* garrison, which held out a few days; but at last capitulated and surrendered, being without all hopes of succours.

The *Swedish* fleet under the command of admiral *Watrang*, gained some advantages on the coast of *Finland*, where they took several *Russian* barks, and made upwards of two hundred prisoners: this fleet was sent out by the regency to guard the coast of *Sweden*, particularly the island of *Allandt*, lest the Czar should make an attempt on either.

The *Russian* fleet commanded by Admiral *Apraxin*, consisted of thirty ships of the line, all built at *St. Petersburg* and *Cronstat*, sixty gallies, an hundred half gallies, besides a great many frigates, yachts, and other vessels of transport. This fleet being assembled at *Cronstat*, set sail for the island

BOOK of *Allandt*, where they had a sharp encounter,

X. with Rear-admiral *Erenscholdt*, who lay in the road of that island with six gallies, and the like number of frigates, in view of the *Swedish* fleet; which, notwithstanding their continual fire, only sunk one *Russian* galley. The Rear-admiral was attacked by the Czar in person, to whom, after an engagement of three hours (fought with all the bravery imaginable) he was forced to surrender, with all his command, at discretion: besides the Rear-admiral, there were about twenty other officers, and near six hundred seamen and soldiers, taken prisoners, with upwards of five hundred killed in the action. The *Russians* sustained likewise great loss, having near to fifteen hundred killed and wounded. The Czar after this battle possessed himself of the isle of *Allandt*, where he landed a body of about twelve thousand men. Admiral *Watrang*, with the rest of the *Swedish* fleet retired towards the *Scheeren*, and left the *Russians* masters of the sea; which, together with the taking of *Allandt*, occasioned no small disturbance at *Stockholm*; so much, that the court was upon the point of removing to a fine palace, called *Droningsholm*, built by the old Queen-dowager, *Charles* the XII's grand mother, about ten *French* leagues above *Stockholm*. After this successful expedition the Czar returned

The *Swedish* Admiral surrenders to the Czar.

He takes possession of *Allandt*.

turned to *Revel*, and from thence to St. *Petersburgh*; where after the Empress was delivered of another daughter called *Margaret*, he made a magnificent triumphant entry, and put a great deal of respect on the *Swedish* Rear-admiral *Erenscholdt* for having made so brave a defence, whereof he himself was witness, from the beginning to the end. Mr. *Erenscholdt* owned that the *Russians* had fought like lions, and with as much conduct as bravery; he said further, that he wanted no more but his own experience, to convince him of the great abilities of the Czar, who in so short a time had brought his subjects to that perfection, particularly his land and naval forces, that nothing in *Europe* could go beyond them.

The Czar, some time before the battle of *Allandt*, having launched an eighty-gun ship at St. *Petersburgh*, where numbers of the the old *Russian* gentry were present, he made use of the occasion to discourse them, after the following manner:

‘ Brethren (said he), is there any one amongst you that could have imagined thirty years ago to have seen the sea covered with *Russian* fleets, after the manner of the best polished foreign nations, and to find land armies formed after the most exact discipline in *Europe*, where with GOD has enabled us to make such

His speech  
to the  
*Russian*  
gentry.

H 2

‘ surprising

BOOK ' surprising conquests, that our nation is at  
 X. ' present held in admiration by all the rest  
 ~~~~~ ' of the world? to see colleges for learn-  
 ' ing, manufactories, and all trades flourish  
 ' to that degree, that the remotest nations,  
 ' not only admire us, but court our friend-  
 ' ship? Historians say, the sciences had their  
 ' arise first in *Greece*; from whence, by  
 ' the injury of the times, they were re-  
 ' moved into *Italy*: from thence, over  
 ' *France, Germany, Britain Sweden* and  
 ' *Poland*; but never hitherto got admittance  
 ' amongst us, owing to the remissness and  
 ' stupidity of our ancestors. All these  
 ' above-mentioned countries were once  
 ' plunged into that darkness wherein we  
 ' have hitherto lived; but by the indefa-  
 ' tigable endeavours of their Governors,  
 ' their eyes were opened, and they came by  
 ' degrees to embrace those arts and sciences  
 ' which *Greece* alone possessed in the be-  
 ' ginning. Now it is come to our turn; if  
 ' you will but heartily second my endea-  
 ' vours, by joining an exact study to your  
 ' blind obedience, and applying yourselves  
 ' to follow the good, and shun the evil.  
 ' I cannot compare the transmigration of  
 ' sciences better than to the circulation of  
 ' the blood in human bodies. I am posses-  
 ' sed with the idea, that they may one day  
 ' abandon *Great Britain, France, Ger-*  
*many,*

many, &c. and come and take up their residence for some ages amongst us, till they return again into Greece, where they had their first rise. I therefore recommend to you most earnestly to put in practice this *Latin* sentence, *ora & labora*, pray and labour: provided you go heartily to work, I do not despair of your being some time able to put the most civilized nations to the blush, and carry the glory of the *Russian* name to the highest degree of perfection.

The old *Russians* gave a most respectful attention to their monarch's discourse; and when he had made an end, they said, *Yei yei prauda*, as much as to say, by all that's good 'tis true; which is a common expression of theirs.

Some time before this, an Ambassador had arrived from *Persia*, who amongst other presents, brought the Czar one of the largest and finest elephants that had been seen, which his majesty caused transport to St. *Petersburgh*, where he built a house for him, and caused treat him with great care.

Much about this time, the Cham of the *Usbeck-Tartars*, sent an Ambassador to the Czar, offering to put himself and people under his protection; adding, that he would always be ready to assist his imperial majesty with an army of fifty thousand men, and

BOOK and for the greater mark of his submission

X. and duty, he would allow his caravans to  
 ~~~~~ pass through his country to *China*; which journey they could accomplish in four months time; whereas, by their former rout, it took up near a whole year. This was so very agreeable and convenient to the Czar, that he carressed the Ambassador in an extraordinary manner, carrying him to see every thing about *St. Petersburg* and *Cronstat*; where he exceedingly admired the fleet, never having seen any shipping before. He also begged of the Czar, that seeing his master was now become his majesty's vassal, he would send his orders to the Cham *Ajuga*, some time ago vassal to the *Russian* empire, to join him against their mutual enemies, and never more to join them against him; which the Czar most willingly did, and dismissed him with considerable presents, being always forward in procuring every thing that could tend to the benefit of his subjects, particularly in their commerce.

About the end of *July*, the imperial Princess was safely delivered of a daughter, who was named *Natalia*, after the Princess, Czar *Peter's* full sister: the imperial Prince or Czarowich, being at that time at *Carelsbad*, as he pretended, for his health.

In

In the beginning of *December* died at *St. Petersburg* the mock King of the *Samoides*: he was a *French* gentleman of a good family, whose name was *de Vimenie*, and had commanded a regiment in *France*; but for some misdemeanours, was put into the *bastile*, where he became disordered in his judgment. After he was liberate, he went first to *Poland*, then to *Russia*, where the Czar created him King of the *Samoides*, and allowed him a pension of ten or twelve rubles a month, besides his entertainment at court. He was a facetious gentleman, and had attained a little of the *Russian* language, which made him still more diverting; so that the Czar often delighted in his company.

*St. Petersburg* was by this time become a large and populous city, consisting of about thirty-five, or forty thousand houses. The Czar by his liberality, had drawn to it from all nations, people of all kinds of employments and trades: he had some time before ordered all the goods from *Russia* to be shipped off from this place, and caused acquaint the regency of *Sweden*, that if they stopped any ships either coming in or going out of *St. Petersburg*, he would fall upon means to stop all the ships going out or coming into the ports of *Sweden*.\*

This


\* For one instance of his encouraging foreign traders, he went on board a small *Scots* ship, drank a mug of flip with the master, and made him a present of a cable.

BOOK This year, on St. *Andrew's* day, the order of St. *Katharine* was instituted, with this device, *For love and fidelity*. This was done to eternize the memory of the Empress-consort, for having accompanied the Czar in his expedition against the *Turks* on the *Pruth*.

The Order of St. *Katharine* instituted.

A chamber of justice for enquiring into abuses.

His imperial majesty, having some time ago perceived that several abuses had been committed by the governors of the provinces, and those who had the trust of the finances, appointed a chamber of justice to enquire into these matters, under the direction of Prince *Basil Dolgoruky*, where all the great persons that had any management in the state, were obliged to give an account of their conduct. The Great-admiral *A-praxin*, Prince *Menzekoff*, *Corfarow*, deputy-governor of *Ingria*, *Kekin* president of the admiralty, and *Sinavin* first commissary, *James Bruce* General of the artillery, and many more were examined. Admiral *A-praxin*, *Menzekoff* and *Bruce*, excused themselves, as being mostly absent on their employments, and consequently could not know what was done by those they intrusted; nay, did not often know what was done in their own families, being often at so great a distance. This excuse was received, partly on the account of the reasonableness of it, but more for the favour they were

were in with their Prince: nevertheless, Book  
they were fined in round sums, but others X.  
who could not justify their conduct were   
severely punished; some with the knout, o-  
thers with the battogues, and several sent  
in exile to *Siberia*, and their goods confis-  
cated. This being over, his majesty ap-  
pointed a senate, composed of eleven emi-  
nent persons, Prince *James Dolgoruky* at  
their head, in order to prevent such malver-  
sations in time to come.

*End of the Tenth Book.*



T H E  
H I S T O R Y  
O F  
*P E T E R the G R E A T,*  
E M P E R O R of R U S S I A.

---

B O O K X I.

**T**HE King of *Sweden*, disappointed of all his great expectations from the *Turks*, left the Grand Seignior's dominions, and travelled incognito through *Transilvania*, *Hungary* and *Germany*, and arrived at last at *Stralsund*, the 22d of November 1714, pretty late in the night. His arrival being known, all the princes in the neighbourhood sent to make him their compliments, and at the same time endeavoured to incline him to make peace, which was the least of his intentions: his first thoughts were employed on falling upon the speediest and most effectual means to raise and support

BOOK  
XI.

The King  
of *Sweden*  
arrives at  
*Stralsund*.

BOOK port a great army, in hopes to renew the  
 XI. war with better success.

~~~~~ The Czar together with the kings of  
*Poland* and *Denmark*, attentive to all that  
 was in agitation at *Stralsund*, resolved to  
 come soon to action, and give no time to  
 this obstinate enemy to put himself in a po-  
 sture of defence, and far less to act offen-  
 sively: the King of *Prussia*, from whom the  
 King of *Sweden* demanded the restitution  
 of *Stetin*, joined the above-mentioned al-  
 lies. Moreover the elector of *Hanover*,  
 who had lately ascended the *British* throne,  
 had by an agreement with the King of *Den-*  
*mark* got *Bremen* and *Verden* delivered up  
 to him; so that the war was like to go on  
 more violently than before.

An alli-  
 ance for  
 opposing  
 him.

The King of *Sweden*, one would think,  
 had got time enough to reflect on his by-  
 past mistakes; tho' by his future conduct, it  
 will appear that he was nothing mended, at  
 least for some time, till Baron *Gortz* got so  
 much interest with him, that he was al-  
 lowed to enter into a private treaty with  
 the Czar; which happened about the end  
 of the year 1715.

The Czar being advertised from good  
 hands, that before the King of *Sweden* left  
*Turky*, he had entered into a treaty with  
 the Sultan to attack *Russia*; that tho' all the  
 articles of peace had been fulfilled, and the  
 hostages

hostages returned, yet the *Turks* and *Tar-B o o k*  
*tars*, contrary to their practice, continued XI.  
 in arms (for in time of peace none wear  
 arms in *Turky*, no not the *Janissaries*, but  
 walk with white sticks only in their hands);  
 the Czar was obliged to order a body of  
 troops into the *Ukraine*, to observe their  
 motions: he also had agreed with the rest  
 of the allies, that whilst they attacked *Stral-*  
*sund*, he should make a descent into *Sweden*,  
 and incomode the enemy on that quarter,  
 which would prevent them from sending  
 troops into *Pomerania*.

About the beginning of *June*, the Czar <sup>The Czar</sup>  
 sailed with a great fleet, and a numerous <sup>sails with a</sup>  
 land force towards the island of *Gotland*, <sup>fleet, &c.</sup>  
 in order to stop all the passes betwixt *Swe-*  
*den* and its *German* dominions; and at the  
 same time Prince *Galitzin* marched from  
*Finland* with the troops under his command,  
 towards the end of the *Bothnick* gulf, as if  
 he designed to make an irruption into the  
 north of *Sweden*. Those motions kept  
 the *Swedish* troops about *Stockholm* in such  
 an uncertainty, that not knowing what  
 course to take, they continued about their  
 capital; so that the *Russians* did what they  
 pleased, meeting with no enemy to oppose  
 them. About the beginning of *September*,  
 the Czar sailed from *Gotland* towards the  
 coast of *Sudermania*; where, at *Gevel*, he  
 caused

BOOK caused debark ten thousand of his troops,  
 XI. in order to fall upon the enemy and pillage  
 the country, none of the *Swedish* troops  
 being within sixteen *French* leagues of them.  
 Much of *Sweden* plundered. After having plundered the country all  
 round, they returned to the fleet loaded  
 with spoil.

*Sheremetoff* order-  
 ed into  
*Pomerania*.

Some weeks before, the Czar had ordered Marshal *Sheremetoff*, with a body of about twelve thousand foot and dragoons, into *Pomerania*, not only to assist the allies to reduce *Stralsund*, which had made a notable defence, but also the town of *Wismar*, the only place of strength remaining to the *Swedes* on the *German* side of the *Baltick*, and which had been invested some time before by the *Danes* and *Hanoverians*. Prince *Galitzin* about this time surprised the town and fortress of *Ulla*; where he found twenty-four pieces of cannon, with a great quantity of ammunition and provisions, and made the garrison prisoners. The Czar was now master of all that side of the *Bothnick* sea, down as far as *Torne* and *Kimi*, except only *Cajaneberg*, situated on an high rock scarcely accessible, but which had been invested some months ago, in hopes to reduce it by famine.

His Czarish majesty being returned with his fleet to *St. Petersburg*, had the unexpressible

pressible joy to see a grandson born to him, Book on the 22d of *October*; but this joy was XI. soon changed into the most sensible grief, by the death of the illustrious mother, the imperial Princess. Some hours before she expired, she sent and desired the Czar to come and see her; to whom she recommended her two children, the Prince who was called *Peter*, and the Princess *Natalia*; as also her servants, whom he promised to care for. She died the sixth day after the birth of the Prince, universally regreted.

The  
Czar's  
grandson  
born. The  
mother  
dies.

On the 8th of *November* the Empress *Katharine* was brought to-bed of a Prince, A son which gave so great pleasure to the Czar, born. that the rejoicings continued above eight days. On the 17th this Prince was baptized by the name of *Peter*; the kings of *Denmark* and *Prussia* standing godfathers by their proxies.

The Czar about this time had the accounts of an irruption made by six thousand of the *Cuban Tartars* (the *Cham's* son at their head) into the kingdom of *Casán*, The Cuban Tartars suppressed. where they had plundered the country, and were carrying off several thousands of the people into slavery, had not Colonel *Swarts* at the head of his regiment, with a body of the country people (amounting in whole to about three thousand) fallen upon them and cut them to pieces: he relieved those they were

BOOK were carrying into slavery, recovered the  
 XI. whole booty, took the Cham's son, together with the rest of the leaders, and caused hang them on the spot.

King Augustus creates new difficulties.

In *Poland* King *Augustus* created to himself new troubles, occasioned by the exorbitant contributions his *Saxon* troops raised in the country. The *Poles* formed themselves into a new confederacy, with one *Gruzinsky* (cousin to him, formerly mentioned) at their head. Many of the crown-army under the Great-general *Siniausky* left him, and joined the confederates, who declared war against the *Saxons*, and they gave each other no quarter. King *Augustus* in this melancholy situation had recourse to the Czar, demanding his assistance; but the Czar had his own reasons for not sending troops into *Poland*, but sent orders to his Ambassador, Prince *Dolgoruky*, to accomodate these differences; which he was not able to effectuate, until the *Saxon* troops were removed out of the country.

*Stralsund* surrenders.

*Stralsund* some time ago had surrendered to the confederates. The King of *Sweden* had left it only two days before, and with great difficulty got over to *Sweden*, passing in view of the *Danish* frigates.

1716.

The Czar left *St. Petersburg* in the beginning of *February* 1716. On his way to *Dantzick*, accompanied by the Empress *Katharine*

*tharine*, -who would not leave him, being not fully recovered of a slight indisposition, which had obliged him to keep his room for some days. . He went through *Riga* and arrived at *Dantzick* about the last of the said month, where he continued until the end of *April*, and amongst other affairs of high consequence, he agreed to the marriage of his niece, the Princess *Katharine* eldest daughter of his brother Czar *John*, with the Duke of *Mechlenburgh*: he designed to put this Prince in possession of *Wismar*, together with its district; and having some time ago ordered Marshal *Sheremetoff* into *Pomerania*, with about twelve thousand of his troops; judging that number not sufficient, he ordered eight thousand men more out of *Courland* to join him. The Czar had good reason for putting this town into the hands of a friend, because it would always be a safe retreat for his shipping on that side.

The Duke of *Mechlenburgh's* marriage with the above-mentioned Princess, was celebrated on the 19th of *April*, in presence of his Imperial majesty, the empress *Katharine*, and King *Augustus*, who was come to *Dantzick* to confer with the Czar about the disorders in *Poland*. The Czar having accounts that some more than forty of his gallies were arrived at *Koningsberg*, went thither, and after having viewed them, he

The Duke  
of *Mech-  
lenburgh*  
marries  
the Czar's  
niece.

BOOK gave audience to the *Persian* Ambassador, XI. and dismissed him with full assurance that he would powerfully assist his master against his rebellious subjects. From *Königsberg*, he went on board the galleys; then returned to *Dantzick* the 9th of *May*, where he had the agreeable accounts that *Cajaneberg*, the only place the *Swedes* had kept possession of on all the east side of the *Bothnick* sea, had surrendered to Prince *Galitzin*: there were found about twenty pieces of cannon, plenty of ammunition, but little or no provisions; the garrison consisting of about two hundred men were made prisoners of war.

The Czar after he went from *Dantzick* to *Königsberg*, caused make some demands on the magistrates (which King *Augustus* agreed to); and they payed an hundred thousand rix dollars, besides engaging to break off all commerce with *Sweden* during the war, and keep up four frigates which the King of *Poland* was to furnish. The Czar went from *Königsberg* to *Stolpe*, a town belonging to the King of *Prussia*, and from thence to *Stetin*; where that King met him incognito, in order to confer together on the situation of the affairs in the north, particularly with regard to *Denmark*. They both agreed, that it would not be proper to assist *Denmark* in making any conquests on the King

Demands  
on Dant-  
zick.

King of *Sweden*, that crown being sufficiently weakened by the loss of *Finland*, *Livonia*, and *Pomerania*; but there was somewhat more in it, which was not as yet come above board. The Czar went from *Stetin* to *Stralsund*, and from that to *Mechlenburgh*, where he had the accounts, that before his second reinforcement came up, *Wismar* had surrendered, and received into their town a garrison of the *Hanoverians* in concert with the King of *Denmark*. This was a great mortification to the Czar, and the source of all the misunderstanding which after happened betwixt him and the court of *Hanover*, and consequently that of *Great Britain*.

The source of the Czar's grudge at King George,

Whilst the Czar was concerting measures with the Duke of *Mechlenburgh*, how to repair this unlucky step, the King of *Denmark* arrived at *Altena*, where the Czar and he got country houses and gardens from the *Hamburghers*; they resolved to pass some few days there, and on the 28th of *April* the King came to visit the Czar, with whom he continued in conference about an hour. The two monarchs remained at *Altena* till the fourth of the ensuing month, and agreed to make a descent with their joint forces on *Schonen*, to oblige the King of *Sweden* to leave *Norway*: the Czar undertook to join him with his fleets and land

Concerts measures with the King of *Denmark*,

BOOK forces; and their rendezvous was to be at  
 XI. and about *Copenhagen*.

~~~~~ The Czar left his country seat, and went to *Pyrment*, where he drank the water some days: from that he returned to *Schwerin* in *Mechlenburgh*. On the 4th of *July*, the Czar with the Empress *Katharine* arrived at *Poltock*, where thirty-six *Russian* gallies had been some time. He went on board the Admiral-galley, and after having caused debark eight thousand of his troops on the island of *Rugen*, he reviewed them, together with two other bodies; all which he ordered into *Mechlenburgh*, under the command of prince *Repnin* and Lieutenant-general *Bower*: during the march of the *Russian* troops, the King of *Denmark* was with all possible diligence making preparations for the descent. The Czar about the middle of *July* arrived with the Empress at *Lubeck*, and on the 17th, he with all the gallies arrived in the road of *Copenhagen*; where the King of *Denmark*, with many of his courtiers, went out in a barge to meet him. His Czarish majesty was received with a discharge of all the guns of the town and fleet; then the King went on board the Czar's galley, after which they entered the town together. There needs not much be said of the magnificence of their reception at  
 the

The Czar  
 arrives in  
 the road  
 of *Copen-  
 hagen*.

the *Danish* court, it was as just as well as the place could afford.

BOOK  
XI.

Two days after, a Squadron from *England*, and another from *Holland*, arrived in the road before *Copenhagen*, with a great fleet of merchant ships designed for several ports in the *Baltick*; the Czar curious to see all these fleets under sail together, caused make the proposal to Admiral *Norris*, who frankly agreed to it: the chief command was conferred on the Czar; Admiral *Norris* had the van, and the *Danish* Admiral Count *Guildenlaw* the rear; the *Dutch* Vice-admiral was ordered to convoy the merchant ships to their different ports.

On the 16th of *August*, his Czarish majesty hoisted the imperial flag on the main-mast head, to let them know that he had taken the chief command upon him; whereupon he was saluted by the *English* Admiral with a discharge of all his guns; the other admirals did the like; after which, the Czar gave the signal to sail: whereupon Sir *John Norris*, as also the *Danish* and *Dutch* admirals, weighed anchor, and after having sailed in conjunction for about two leagues from *Copenhagen*, the Czar stopt and cast anchor: Admiral *Norris* did the same, about a mile in head of him, and so of the rest. The Czar sailed with the combined fleets up the length of *Amholm*, with design

Diverts himself with the *English* and *Dutch* fleets.

**BOOK** sign to come up with the *Swedish* fleet; but

**XI.** they had already retired into *Carelskroon*:

then the combined fleets continued sailing, until they all came up, and cast anchor before *Stralsund*; where the Czar sent orders to *Rostock*, *Travemunde*, &c. that all his troops should embark and sail for *Copenhagen*, to which place his majesty with the whole fleet in a few days returned. Nothing could give the Czar greater pleasure, than seeing himself at the head of the fleets of four different nations, and where they made so great an appearance, that the like was scarcely to be seen, amounting in all to about eight hundred ships of all kinds.

The descent on *Schonen* suspended.

After the Czar returned to *Copenhagen*, he thought it proper to defer the descent on *Schonen* till the ensuing spring; giving for reasons, that in the first place, the year was so far spent, that they could not propose taking of *Malmo* or any of the fortified towns; and that he was well informed the *Swedes* had consumed and carried off all the provisions; so that the army could not but suffer exceedingly. The King of *Denmark*, on the other hand, urged strenuously that the descent should then be made; assuring the Czar, that they had still time enough to take a town or two, and that provisions to the army should not be wanting, tho' he should be obliged to transport them

them from his own country: but all would **Book** not do, the Czar was positive. At last, his **XI.** *Danish* majesty was so pressing, that the Czar told him, if he would undertake it, (tho' he did not think it practicable) he should assist him with sixteen battalions of foot, and a thousand dragoons; but the King demanded twenty-five battalions of foot, which the Czar would not grant. The King finding himself disappointed, caused by his minister acquaint the Czar, that since in all appearance he had never heartily designed this descent, he should have told him so much when they had concerted the affair together near *Hamburgh*, which would have saved him a vast deal of charges, having been obliged to lay out forty thousand crowns a month for the transports alone; so that he looked upon **The King** this design as altogether laid aside; and all **of Den-** the favour he had now to ask of his Cza- **mark ill** **satisfied.** *rish* majesty, was to remove his troops out of his dominions immediately, seeing he had no more use for them. The King of *Denmark* in his justification which he published on this occasion, gave his reasons as above.

The Czar ordered forthwith all the troops he had in the *Danish* dominions into *Mechlenburgh*, where they were to have their winter quarters, and to be employed in the spring

**BOOK** spring as occasion should offer. His fleets  
**XI.** (both ships and gallies) returned most of  
 them to *St. Petersburg*: he himself, with  
 the Empress *Katharine*, went through *Jut-*  
*land* into *Mech'enburgh*. At *Frederickstadt*,  
 as he passed, he looked narrowly into the  
 manufactories; from thence he went to  
*Lubeck*, and from that to *Havelberg*, where  
 he had an interview with the King of *Prus-*  
*sia*. The two princes continued some days  
 together, and conferred on the affairs of  
*Sweden* and *Poland*. The Czar had some  
 time ago communed on the affairs of *Swe-*  
*den*, when his *Swedish* majesty and he were  
 very near an accommodation; otherways  
 the invasion of *Schonen* had infallibly gone  
 on.

The Czar  
in Hol-  
land. From *Havelberg* the Czar went to *Ham-*  
*burgh*, where he rested a few days; after  
 which he took journey for *Holland*, leaving  
 the command of his army in *Mech'enburgh*  
 to Marshal *Sheremetoff*. He arrived at *Am-*  
*sterdam* about the middle of *December* to-  
 wards night: next day he was saluted and  
 welcomed by four deputies, whom the  
 states had appointed to attend him during  
 his stay in *Holland*.

The affairs in *Poland* were all this time  
 nothing bettered. Prince *Gregorie Dolgo-*  
*raky* the Czar's Ambassador at that court,  
 as mediator, in name of his master, got  
 them

them at last to agree to a cessation of arms, Book  
 and to hold a congress at *Lublin*, in order XI.  
 to settle matters. The confederates were so high in their demands, that nothing was concluded; so that from *Lublin* they ad-  
 journed the congress, and transported it to *Warsaw*; but the Czar knowing very well the temper of the *Poles*, ordered the lieutenant-generals, *Renn* and *Bower*, to march into *Poland* with a body of fifteen thousand of his troops, in order to force those who were not for peace to submit. This, together with a defeat the confederates had met with near *Thorne* from the *Saxon* troops, obliged them to conclude peace on the 3d of *November*, under the guarantie of his Czarish majesty; who nevertheless continued his troops in *Poland*, where they were assigned quarters, to prevent the restless *Poles* (who were not in use of keeping treaties) from committing new hostilities. The *Saxon* troops by the articles of peace were obliged to leave *Poland*.

The Czar, as he was expecting the Empress *Katharine* at *Amsterdam*, received the agreeable accounts of her being safely delivered of a Prince, at *Wezel*; which his majesty immediately notified to the states, intreating them at the same time to become godfathers; but receiving advice that the young Prince died the day of his birth,

BOOK they had not the occasion to accept of that  
 XI. honour. He employed his time in obser-  
 ~~~~~  
 1717. ving all the curiosities, in and about the  
 place; particularly at *Sardam*, where he  
 went to visit his old acquaintance, and the  
 house he had lodged in formerly, and where  
 he had wrought as a carpenter; which the  
*Dutch* had called *Princehuys*.

At last, the Empress arrived at *Amster-*  
*dam* on the 9th of *February* 1717; where  
 she was received, and complimented after  
 the same manner the Czar had been before.  
 From *Amsterdam* their majesties went to the  
*Hague*, where they continued to the 4th of  
*April*. The Czar (always curious where-  
 ever he went) hearing there was a mathe-  
 matician in the place, who pretended to  
 have found out the longitude, went to see  
 his performances, and put to him some  
 nice questions; which he answered in the  
 best manner he could, and was not a little  
 surprized to find a Prince so well versed  
 in the mathematicks. The Czar owned  
 he was an ingenious fellow, but had no  
 great faith in his pretended discovery.

Whilst the Czar was in *Holland*, some  
 intrigues were discovered in *England*, car-  
 ried on by Baron *Gortz* and Count *Gyllem-*  
*berg*, tending to the exciting an insur-  
 rection in *Great Britain*, in favour of the  
*Chevalier de St. George*. Count *Gyllem-*  
*berg*,


*berg*, envoy extraordinary from the King of *Sweden*, was arrested, and all his papers seized. At the same time the States-general treated Baron *Gortz*, and the young Count *Gyllemberg*, after the same manner, at the instance of the *British* court. On this occasion, some letters found amongst their papers were published, with relation to that design, which was to have been put in execution the ensuing month of march; to favour and support which, the King of *Sweden* was to make a descent into *Scotland* with ten thousand foot, and two thousand horse, with arms and ammunition for as many more. It appeared by some letters, particularly one from young Count *Gyllemberg*, writ from the *Hague* the 27th of *November* 1716. that the Czar had no knowledge of this design, but that they were in hopes he would be persuaded to enter into it. Indeed his Czarish majesty was suspected of having a hand in this project; tho' by those letters it would seem, and by the memorial his minister presented to the court at *London*, (complaining of the injustice which was done him) that he had no knowledge thereof: for he declared, that he was far from approving of any insurrection or design of that kind against a crowned head, who was in alliance with him, not only whilst elector of *Hanover*, but since he mounted the

Book  
 XI.  
 Count  
*Gyllem-*  
*berg* and  
 Baron  
*Gortz* ar-  
 rested.

BOOK *British* throne; and that *Britain* had time  
 XI. out of mind been in good understanding  
 ~~~~~ and friendship with *Russia*, and enjoyed an  
 advantageous commerce. This memorial  
 met with so suitable a return, that the world  
 seemed satisfied the Czar had no hand in  
 the project. 'Tis true, the declarations of  
 public ministers are very uncertain marks of  
 the intentions of their masters, who find it  
 very convenient to have people to tell lies  
 for them at foreign courts.

His majesty left the *Hague* on the 4th of  
*April*, on his journey to *Paris* by *Amster-*  
*dam*; and from that to *Antwerp*, where he  
 was received by the Duke of *Holstein*  
*Ploen*, who was ordered by the Emperor  
 to do him all honours, and accompany him  
 through the *Austrian Netherlands*. He ar-  
 rived on the 14th at *Brussels*; from that  
 he passed through *Ghent* and *Bruges* to  
*Dunkirk*, where he observed the *Rif-bank*,  
 after the model whereof, he proposed to  
 raise one at *Cronstat*, or *St. Petersburg*.

The Czar On the 7th of *May* his majesty arrived at  
 in *Paris*. *Paris*, where great preparations were made  
 for his reception: he was conducted by the  
 Marshal de *Tessé* into the *Louvre* where a  
 magnificent entertainment was prepared for  
 him: after which, he went and lodged at the  
*Hotel de Lesdiguière's*, and was visited next  
 morning early by the Duke of *Orleans* Re-  
 gent.

gent. On the tenth, he had a visit from Book  
the King: his Czarish majesty received the XI.  
young monarch as he stepped out of the   
coach. He returned the visit next day,  
when the King did the like honour to him.  
That same day, the magistrates of *Paris*  
came to salute his Czarish majesty, and made  
him presents. These ceremonies being over,  
he employed his time for some days in  
visiting all the curiosities, fine hotels, public  
places, bridges, with all the royal houses  
in and about that great city, viz. *St. Cloud*  
(where he was received and entertained by  
the Regent) and *Meadon*; after which, he  
went to *Fountainbleau*; where, on the road,  
at *Petitbourg*, he was entertained by the  
Duke d'Antin: at *Fountainbleau*, (where  
he continued only one night) he was regaled  
and diverted with the deer-hunting, by  
the Count de *Toulouse*; after dinner he re-  
turned to *Petitbourg*, where he was enter-  
tained as before. The 1st of *June*, he re-  
turned to *Paris*, after having paid a visit at  
*Choisi*, to the Princess-dowager of *Conti*.  
On the 2d, he went to *St. Dennis*, where he  
saw the treasury, &c. and was entertained  
by the *Benedictines* in the abbey. From  
*St. Dennis* on his return to *Paris*, he was  
received and entertained by the Duke de  
*Tresmes* at *St. Ouen*. On the 3d, his ma-  
jesty went to *Versailles*, where he continu-  
ed

BOOK ed only a few minutes. He compared this

XI. palace to a pidgeon with the wings of an eagle: from *Versailles* he went to *Trignon*, which he liked much better, and viewed with great curiosity the gardens, canals and cascades; particularly those at *Marly* (together with the machine) where he was regalled with the King's musick, and a ball. All the court ladies, whose curiosity led them to see this great Prince, came there: the dancing continued till late at night, wherewith the Czar was much diverted. The 11th, he went to *St. Germain's en Lay*, and after having viewed the old and new castle, he went from thence to the monastery of *St. Syr*, and visited *Madam de Maintenon*: then, after having observed the house, and the design thereof, which he approved much: he returned, and lay all night at *Trignon*. The 12th he returned to *Paris* by the way of *Versailles*, where he viewed all the curiosities about this place; after having dined he went to *Chailot*, and paid a visit to the Queen of King *James VII.* after which he passed through the *Cours la Reine*, and went to *Mr. de Launai's*, where the medals are struck, and where the Duke of *Antin* waited on him, and in his presence caused strike a medal of gold, which he presented to the Czar, who was surprized to see his own effigies on the one side, with

with these words, PETRUS ALEXUWICH BOOK  
 CZAR MAG. RUSS. IMPERATOR, and XI.  
 on the reverse two trumpets, with these  
 words, VIRES ACQUIRIT EUNDO; al-  
 luding to the different voyages this Prince  
 had made. After which, all who ac-  
 companied him, were presented with me-  
 dals of silver, like the first. On the  
 13th in the morning, the Pope's Nuncio  
 came to wait on him, and made his com-  
 pliment in *Italian*. On the 14th, he  
 went to the royal printing-house; from  
 that to the college of the four nations,  
 founded by Cardinal *Mazarine*, where he  
 viewed the library and the church; from  
 which he went to the *Sorbonne*, and was  
 received by the \* doctors: here he ad-  
 mired Cardinal *Richelieu's* tomb. When  
 he returned to his hotel, he found the  
 Ambassadors of *Portugal* and *Malta*, who  
 were come to salute him. He was much  
 taken with the tapestry at the *Gobelins*, par-  
 ticularly with the history of *Don-Quixot*,  
 which the King presented him with after-  
 wards. On the 16th, he went to view the  
*French* household in the *Elisian* fields; but  
 there was such a croud and dust, that he fell  
 ill and was obliged to leave the place, with-  
 out

\* Some of the doctors presented him with proposals in  
*Latin*, for an union between the two churches of *Rome* and  
*Russia*.

BOOK out seeing the troops march off, or taking  
XI. a right view of them. On the 17th, after  
w having received a present of an excellent  
sea-chart from the Duke *de Toulouse*, he went  
to the observatory, where he continued about two hours, viewing and observing, every thing narrowly; whence he went and supped with the Marshal *de Villars* and was entertained, with all the gaiety imaginable. On the 19th, he went incognito to take leave of the King, where he presented his majesty with the plan of *St. Petersburg*. On the 19th he went to hear the pleadings in the parliament, where, after two advocates had pleaded a cause, the King's advocate resuming the whole, added that there had been several examples where this court had been consulted by sovereigns on the most important affairs of state, but that a monarch whose dominions lay at so great a distance from *France* equally powerful in *Asia* and *Europe*, would needs be pleased to witness their session, was, an event so rare that it ought to be enrolled in the registers of parliament, to be transmitted to posterity. After which the Czar rose up and saluted the gentlemen of the law, who were all richly apparelled; the presidents in their scarlet furred robes, which had not been practised in any time past, but in presence of the Emperor *Charles V.*

That

That same day in the afternoon, the Book King went to visit and take leave of the XI. Czar, who went afterwards to the academy of sciences, and observed with great curiosity all the useful inventions at that place. On the 20th, he went a second time to see the medals of the King of *France*, which he examined with attention, particularly that of the present King, with the rising sun and device JUBET SPERARE; the director thought himself obliged to make a present of it to his Czarish majesty; which he thankfully received, declaring, that he would preserve it with great regard. Before he left *Paris*, he caused purchase (amongst other curiosities) a sphere exactly done by Mr. *Pigen*, according to *Copernicus's* system; after which to show his gratitude to the *French* quality, who had paid him so great respect and attendance, during his stay at *Paris*, he gave his pictures richly set in diamonds to the Duke d'*Antin*, the Marshal de *Tessé*, the Marshal d'*Etrees*, the Marquis of *Livry* and to Mr. *de Verton*; which last he had so great consideration for, that he procured to him from the King a pension of six thousand livres: he also made a present to Mr. *de Crefmes* of a gold watch set with diamonds; besides which, he caused distribute a great many golden medals among several of the *French* officers, with the Kings ser-

BOOK wants at *Versailles*, *Marly*, *Trianon*, *Mea-*  
 XI. *don* and *Fountainbleau*, which he intrusted  
 ~~~~~ Mr. *de Verton* to deliver. He also presented  
 the Duke *d'Antin*, and several other persons of distinction, with medals struck in  
*Holland*, representing the most remarkable  
 actions of his reign.

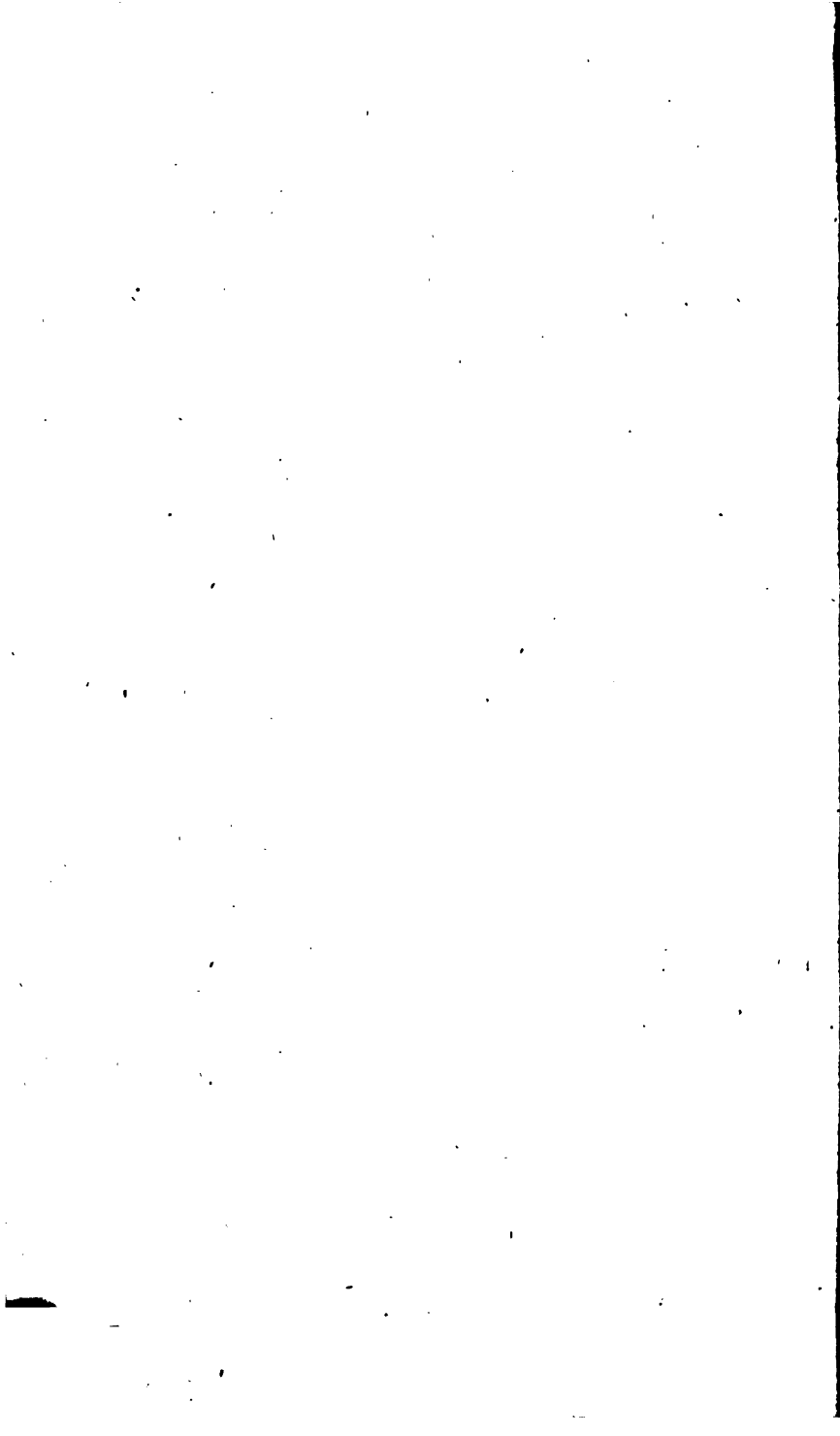
Leaving *Paris*, the Czar pursued his rout through *Reims* to *Namur*, where he arrived on the 25th; the Count of *Homppeck* (the Governor) received and regalled his majesty after the best manner possible: he took great pleasure in observing the fortifications. His majesty was also received at *Liege*, in name of the elector, with all possible honours; here he met with his old *London* acquaintance the Duke of *Leids*, to whom he was exceeding generous. At last he arrived at *Amsterdam* on the 2d of *August*, where the Empress *Katharine* expected him with impatience: he continued at this place, and in the neighbourhood, until the 2d of *September*, observing exactly every thing that was worth seeing; after which he departed for *Berlin*, through *Cleves* and *Magdeburg*.

His majesty before returning to his own dominions, being urged by the King and republic of *Poland* to cause remove his troops out of that country, sent an order to Marshal *Sheremetoff* to that effect.

The

The Czar arrived at *Berlin* on the 19th, Book  
 and the Empress on the 25th; to which XI.  
 place also the Duke and Dutchess of *Mech-*  
*lenburgh* were come to salute their majesties.  
 The Czar had several conferences with the  
 King of *Prussia*, with whom he continued  
 three days, after which he pursued his rout  
 through *Dantzick*, *Koningsberg*, *Riga* and  
*Revel*, till he arrived at *St. Petersburg*; The  
 where, after sixteen months absence, his Czar's re-  
 presence was necessary. Before his arrival turn to  
 at *Dantzick*, Prince *Dolgoruky* had settled all St. Peters-  
 matters in dispute with that city; which his burgh.  
 majesty ratified. The Czar during his ab-  
 sence, found that several abuses had crept  
 into the government, besides the elopement Finds  
 of his son, the Czarowich, which gave him things to  
 the greatest uneasiness of all, not knowing make him  
 at first to what place in the world he had uneasy.  
 gone.

*End of the Eleventh Book.*



T H E  
H I S T O R Y  
O F  
P E T E R the G R E A T,  
E M P E R O R of R U S S I A.

---

B O O K XII.

**T**HE Czar employed his time the rest **BOOK**  
of the year (1717) in examining into **XII.**  
the conduct of his ministers, in rectifying  
abuses, and in punishing the guilty. He  
continued all the mornings in the senate,  
examining the complaints brought by his  
subjects: but finding that the evil was  
greater than he had first imagined, he  
would not proceed rashly, but allow  
time to the delinquents to produce their  
reasons. For this end, he established a tri-  
bunal, divided into several classes; each of  
which was composed of a Major, a Captain,  
and Lieutenant of the guards, who were to  
examine carefully the affairs under their  
cognizance,

BOOK cognizance, and to pronounce sentence: so


XII. that without regard or distinction of persons, (neither service nor rank considered) the senate, composed of the most illustrious and distinguished persons of the empire, was obliged to appear before this tribunal, and give an account of their conduct. The

New abuses punished.

Czar to his great regret found but too many guilty, who were punished according to their crimes. His majesty during these examinations, (at which he was present by four in the morning) caused publish new regulations, which were the fruits of his travels: he established different councils for foreign affairs, the finances, the navy, marine, the manufactories and commerce, after the manner of *France*.

Different councils established.

About this time, he received accounts that the *Cuban-Tartars*, who inhabit the countries beyond the frontiers of *Casan*, were assembling in great bodies, with design to invade that kingdom: the Czar at first did not believe that this could be done, but by the connivance of the *Porte*, or at least of the *Tartars* of the *Crimea*; but the Governor of *Asoph* was among the first who gave advertisement of their motions, and the Sultan sent an Aga express to the Czar, to certify him, that he had no hand in the incursions of these rebels, but on the contrary, was resolved to observe religiously the last

last treaty; that far from favouring them in Book the least, he had given orders to give them XII. no harbour, if in their retreat they entered  into any of the countries belonging to the *Ottoman* empire.

The Czar was satisfied with this declaration, and believed the Sultan sincere, the Measures taken for suppressing the Cuban Tartars. rather that he knew his highness had other affairs on hand in *Servia*, and other parts of his empire; so that his Czarish majesty only ordered ten thousand foot and dragoons, in conjunction with the *Cossacks*, to oppose the *Tartars*.

After this, he gave orders to rig out a strong fleet against the spring; then left 1718, *St. Petersburg* and went to *Moscow*, where he had not been for seven years past. He was received in his capital, where he arrived in the beginning of *January* (1718), with universal joy; but he had not been long there, before he observed many abuses, Abuses at Moscow. the rectifying and punishing of which, he referred to the tribunal he had established: but what concerned him most, was the flight of his son the Czarowich, heir apparent of the empire, who, as the Czar The Czarowich's flight. left *Copenhagen*, before he went into *Holland*, the better to succeed in his design, gave out that he was going to join the Czar his father, who actually had invited him, as will appear by the following Letter.

My

## BOOK

## XII.

*My Son,*

The  
Czar's let-  
ter to his  
son.

YOUR first letter of the 29th of *June*, and the other of the 30th of *July*, I have received; but seeing you only write of the state of your health, I send you these to acquaint you, that I want to know your resolution in regard to the succession. When I parted with you last, you told me, according to your usual way of speaking, that you did not think yourself capable of it on account of your infirmities; and that you would prefer a retreat into a convent. I told you to think seriously on an affair of so great consequence, and to acquaint me with your resolution, which I have expected these seven months bygone; and to this day, I have not heard a word from you on that subject. You have had time enough to think of it; so on receipt hereof take your part, either of the one or the other: if you resolve on the first, which is to apply, and render yourself capable of the succession, do not defer above a week in setting out for this place, where you will be in time enough to witness the operations of the ensuing campaign: but if you rather chuse the other part, let me know where, at what time, and on what day, you'll put your resolution

‘ tion in execution, that I may be easy and Book  
 ‘ know what I have to expect from you. XII.  
 ‘ Let me have your final answer by the ~~~~~  
 ‘ courier who delivers you these. In the  
 ‘ first instance, acquaint me how you are  
 ‘ to take journey from St. *Petersburgh*, and  
 ‘ what day you are to set out. I repeat once  
 ‘ more, that I am positive you determine  
 ‘ yourself to something, otherways, I will  
 ‘ conclude you only design to gain time, to  
 ‘ pass it in your ordinary indolence and  
 ‘ stupidity.’

*Copenhagen, August*  
 26th 1716.

## PETER.

The Czarowich saw plainly, that he must now determine himself one way or other. He wanted to govern, not over a polished and civilized people, but over *Russians* after their old way. He thought it too dangerous and troublesome to follow the steps of his great and prudent father, who was at unspeakable pains to impress right principles on him (a little too late); but all would not do. He had got into the hands of the clergy, who could not bear with the Czar's annexing the greater part of their revenues to the crown; so that all their hope was in the Czarowich, who they expected would make all things run in the former channel. There

BOOK were other dissatisfied great men in the nation, particularly his mother's kindred: in a word all the great things his father had done he slighted and despised. However he answered his majesty's letter, promising to depart within the time limited; which 'tis true he did, but not with the design of going to his father, but to make his escape: so having provided himself with a round sum of money, he pursued his journey through *Livonia*, and from thence straight to *Vien-na*. On the road he wrote to his father, and dated the letter as from *Koningsberg*, lest the Czar should have ordered an escort to meet him.

The Czar was at *Amsterdam* when he got the first accounts of his son's flight: he immediately dispatched several persons of his retinue to all the courts of *Germany* and *Italy*, to endeavour to find him out. The Czar judged that he would go and put himself under the protection of the Emperor. He did so indeed; but considering his circumstances the Emperor advised him to keep private; and for that reason persuaded him to go into the kingdom of *Naples*, where he would be less exposed to be known: but the vigilance and prudence of his father soon found him out; and as he had left *Paris* he had sure accounts that his son was in the castle of *St. Elmi*; and having got the length

length of *Spa*, he dispatched his privy-Book  
 counsellor Mr. *Tolstoy*, and captain Ro- XII.  
*manzoff* to *Naples*, to persuade the Czaro- ~~~~~  
 wick willingly to return and submit to his  
 father. They were charged with the follow-  
 ing letter:

SON,

‘ YOUR disobedience and contempt of  
 ‘ my orders is known to all the Another  
 letter to  
 the Czar  
 rowich.  
 ‘ world. Neither my words nor my threats  
 ‘ have had influence to make you follow my  
 ‘ instructions; and at last after having deceiv-  
 ‘ ed me when I took leave of you, and hav-  
 ‘ ing no regard to the oaths you made me,  
 ‘ you have pushed your disobedience to  
 ‘ the extremity by your flight, and putting  
 ‘ your self, like a traitor, under the pro-  
 ‘ tection of a stranger: a thing unheard of  
 ‘ hitherto, not only in our family, but also  
 ‘ amongst our subjects of any considerati-  
 ‘ on. What prejudice, and trouble have  
 ‘ you not occasioned by it to your father,  
 ‘ and disgrace to your country? I write you  
 ‘ for the last time, to let you know that  
 ‘ you are to do what *Tolstoy* and *Romanzoff*  
 ‘ will tell you from me. If you are afraid  
 ‘ of me, I assure you by this, and I promise  
 ‘ before GOD and his angels, that I shall not  
 ‘ punish you; and if you submit and be-

N 2

‘ come

BOOK ' come obedient to my will, and return,  
 XII. ' I shall love you more than ever; but if  
 ~~~~~ ' you do not, but continue obstinate, I give  
 ' you as your father, in virtue of the power  
 ' I have received from GOD, my eternal ma-  
 ' lediction, for the vexation and offence  
 ' you have caused me. And as your sove-  
 ' reign, I assure you I shall find means to  
 ' treat you as you deserve; in which  
 ' I hope GOD will assist me, and take  
 ' my just cause into his hand. Moreover  
 ' remember, that I have not used any man-  
 ' ner of violence towards you; what need  
 ' had I to allow you the free choice  
 ' which part to take? if I had had a mind  
 ' to force you, had I not the power in my  
 ' hands? I had no more to do but command,  
 ' to have been obeyed,'

*Spa, July 16th*  
*1717.*

PETER.

The situation of the Czarowich's affairs, when these two gentlemen delivered him the Czar's letter, did not allow him to hesitate in taking the part of submission, the place of his retreat being discovered; besides, he had no reason to expect that the Emperor would quarrel with the Czar, by protecting a rebellious son: therefore he followed the  
 advice

advice of Messrs. *Tolstoy* and *Romanzoff*, and Book wrote the following letter to his Czarish XII. majesty, before their departure from St. *Elmi*.

*Most Gracious Sovereign and Father,*

I have received your majesty's gracious letter from Messrs. *Tolstoy* and *Romanzoff*; by which I am assured of your majesty's most gracious pardon on my return, for leaving the country without your permission. I give you most humble thanks, and acknowledge myself unworthy of all favour. I throw myself at your majesty's feet, imploring your clemency. I pray you to forgive me my crimes, tho I own I deserve the worst of punishments: but I rely on your gracious assurances, and give myself up entirely to your will and pleasure. I leave *Naples* soon, with design to wait on your majesty at St. *Petersburgh*, along with these gentlemen your majesty has sent. Your most humble, and most unworthy servant, who does not deserve to be called your son.

The Czar-  
rowich's  
letter to  
the Czar.

*Naples, October*

4th 1717.

ALEXIS.

The

BOOK XII. The Czarowich set out for *Russia*, and arrived at the capital, where the Czar then was, on the 11th of *February* 1718; and that same night he appeared before his father, with whom he had a long conference. The next day a great council was held; and on the 14th, (at break of day) the guards marched and surrounded the castle; where all the ministers, boyars and grandees, were assembled in the great hall, and the ecclesiasticks in the cathedral. The Czarowich was brought as a prisoner without his sword, into the hall; where in presence of all the assembly he presented a petition to his majesty, and at the same time shedding a flood of tears, fell flat on his face before him. The Czar delivered the petition to Baron *Shafferoff*, the Vice-chancellor, which contained his confession; then he raised him up, asking him what he desired. The prince implored his clemency and begged his life, which the Czar granted; but told him at the same time, that having by his behaviour rendered himself incapable of the succession, he must now before all present formally renounce it; since it was what he had often before desired: the Czarowich answered he would do whatever his majesty pleased to command him. The Czar further told him, he had granted his pardon, but on condition that he should discover his accomplices, and

Is made  
prisoner on  
his return  
to *Moscow*.

and the advisers of his flight, and what he BOOK had thereby designed. Upon this, the Czarowich XII. whispered his father in the ear, who went with him into another room; where it is believed he informed the Czar of his advisers, for immediately, three couriers were dispatched to different places. The Czar having returned with his son into the hall, the Czarowich signed an act, declaring himself incapable of governing, and renounced for ever his right to the empire: Signs an act of renunciation. upon which the Czar caused openly read his manifesto, containing the reasons that made him exclude Prince *Alexis* from the succession. After this, all the ministers, boyars, grandees, and officers present, signed an oath, (which they confirmed by kissing of the cross) setting forth, that the Czar having by his letters patent, declared the Czarowich *Alexis* excluded from the throne, and had established his second son *Peter* his immediate successor; they acknowledged the justice of his majesty's decree, renouncing Prince *Alexis* for ever, and acknowledging Prince *Peter*; and promising, Prince Peter acknowledged. that they would support and maintain him in his right against all pretenders and opposers, on whatsoever pretext.

The Czar, with all the assembly, went to the cathedral; where, after having discoursed for some time on the disobedience and

BOOK and bad conduct of his son, all the clergy  
 XII. signed and took the said oath on the Evangelists. After which they were all dismissed, and the Czar returned to *Prebrasinsky*. He also caused tender the oath to all who had any office, either in the army, or in the police, dispersing his manifesto, which gave his reasons for excluding his son from the succession.

Amongst other articles in the Czar's manifesto, this was one.-----Upon the Czarowich's arrival at *Vienna*, the Emperor advised him (being well informed of his bad conduct, and after what manner he had treated his consort, who was sister to the Empress) to return and submit to his father and sovereign: but he represented, that if he returned or was delivered up to his father, who was his enemy and a tyrant, he could expect nothing but death; so that at last the Emperor granted him a place of retreat in *Naples*.

The Czarowich's act of renunciation is as follows. ' I underwritten, declare before  
 ' God and on his Holy Evangel, that on  
 ' account of the crimes I have committed a-  
 ' gainst his Czarish majesty, my father and  
 ' sovereign, as his manifesto more fully  
 ' bears, I am excluded from the *Russian*  
 ' throne, and most justly, having by my  
 ' faults and unworthiness merited the same.

‘ I oblige myself, and swear by the Al-Book  
 ‘ mighty GOD, the Holy Trinity, as su- XII.  
 ‘ preme judge, to submit in all respects to  
 ‘ the will and pleasure of the Czar my  
 ‘ father, that I never shall pretend to nor  
 ‘ accept of the succession on any pretext  
 ‘ whatever: but I do hereby acknowledge  
 ‘ the Czarowich, *Peter* my brother, for  
 ‘ rightful and lawful successor to the *Rus-*  
 ‘ *sian* monarchy: whereupon I kiss the  
 ‘ holy cross, and sign these presents with  
 ‘ my hand.’

*Moscow, Feb. 14th*  
 1718.

## ALEXIS.

After this, the Czar, the Czarowich, all the ecclesiastics, counsellors, boyars and ministers, with the whole court, repaired to *St. Petersburg*, where they arrived about the end of *February*.

The Czar was not satisfied with his son's exterior acknowledgment of his crimes, but must needs know his accomplices, and those who advised him; judging that as long as they remained concealed, there was no safety; they might still continue to impress the Prince with bad counsel, in hopes of aggrandizing themselves in the event of his attaining to the succession: therefore his majesty told the Czarowich, that unless he

BOOK declared to him the truth of all the particulars and circumstances of his flight, and who were his advisers; his pardon should be null and of no effect.

The Czarowich promised to declare the truth, without disguise, as before GOD; on which he kissed the crucifix and Holy Evangel. Then the Czar desired him to do it in order and in writing, particularly to give answers to the following points.

Steps of  
the trial.

I. Was there any premeditate design in the answer you gave to the letter I wrote you, after the interrment of your spouse, and to those I wrote you since on the same subject? And since you always shewed a great forwardness to retire into a convent, both in your letters to me, and by word of mouth, and that now it clearly appears, that all you both wrote and said was but dissimulation, tell me with whom you advised and concerted those matters?

The Czarowich made answer to the first point after this manner:

*Most Clement Lord and Father,*

I communicated the letter I received from your majesty (after the interrment of my spouse) to *Alexander Kekin*, and to *Mikifor Wosinskoj*; they both advised me to renounce the succession, that I might be discharged

charged of so great a burden, on account BOOK  
 of the weakness of my constitution; they XII.  
 both insisted, that seeing there was no o- ~  
 ther resource, the only part I had to chuse  
 was to go into a convent; which advice  
 they gave, then left me.

*Alexander Kekin*, some time after your  
 majesty's departure from *St. Petersburg*,  
 went to *Carlesbath* for his health: about a  
 fortnight before, he came to me at the vil-  
 lage, where I then lived, and told me that he  
 was going to find out a place for me. I  
 waited there with a design to escape as soon  
 as I had advice from him.

I spoke also to Prince *Basil Dolgoruky*,  
 and to Count *Theodore Apraxin*, before I  
 returned an answer to your majesty. I  
 begged of them, that when you spoke with  
 them concerning me, they would advise you  
 to deprive me of the succession, and to al-  
 low me to live in some country place, to  
 pass the rest of my days in peace and quiet.  
 Count *Theodore* told me, that if your ma-  
 jesty spoke with him on that subject, he  
 should give you that advice. Prince *Basil*  
 said much the same; adding, ' Give him  
 ' a thousand promises, who knows what  
 ' may happen? You know the proverb,  
 ' The time will come, but GOD knows  
 ' when.'

BOOK XII. Some time after, Prince *Basil* came to me, desiring in your name to see the letter your majesty had wrote me; which I showed him: then he told me he had spoke to your majesty, who (he thought) designed to deprive me of the succession, and that you seemed well pleased with my answer. He asked if I had made mention of my brother in the terms he had advised me? I told him I had: 'then,' said he, 'be easy, you have nothing more to disquiet you.' *Kekin* having told me that there were spies at court, who informed your majesty of all who came to see me; I asked him how he knew that? He assured me he had it from some of those about your majesty, but named no body. So thereafter I was obliged to send my letters to him to be perused and corrected, before I sent them to you. *Kekin* also advised me to renounce the succession, saying, that would make me easy, since the weakness of my constitution could never allow me to bear so weighty a burden. *Necephorus* said likewise, 'What needs you value the succession, provided you have wherewith to live a retired quiet life?'

I consulted the same *Kekin* and *Necephorus* on the second letter I wrote your majesty: they said to me, among other discourse

course which I do not so well remember, Book  
 that I ought to retire into the convent, for XII.  
 the cowl was not nailed to one's head; it  
 might be thrown off, and hung upon a hook;  
 that this would make me easy in the mean  
 time, 'and for hereafter,' added they,  
 'who knows what may happen?'

*Necephorus* said some time after, that  
 there was no other expedient, I must retire  
 into the convent, then tell my confessor to  
 acquaint the metropolitan of *Resan* that I  
 was forced to take that resolution, that he  
 might know I did not make it my choice,  
 nor was put there for crimes.

Prince *George Trubetzkoy*, and the Cza-  
 rowich of *Siberia*, were also in the know-  
 ledge of the above-mentioned second letter  
 I sent your majesty. Prince *Trubetzkoy* ask-  
 ed me some weeks after, what paper your  
 majesty put in my hands when he was pre-  
 sent? Were the contents of it good or bad?  
 and after I had told him the subject, and  
 my answer, he said, I did very well in re-  
 nouncing the succession, and bid me re-  
 member that there was greater subject of  
 affliction found in the midst of grandeur  
 and riches, than in a private state. I told  
 him he was in the right: I was so fully de-  
 termined to retire into the convent, that I  
 left in Prince *James Dolgoruky's* hand a  
 good

BOOK good sum of ducats, to be given to \* *Euphrosine*, the woman I kept, for her maintenance whilst I was in the convent; which is known to *Nicephor Basemsky*, *John Afsonassieff*, and my confessor *George* who knew nothing of my flight.

II. Had you no discourse with any persons during my late illness at St. *Petersburgh*, wherein they shewed a forwardness to join you in case I had died?

I did not hear one word from any persons on that subject during your illness.

III. How long is it since you designed to put the project of your flight in execution? for since you did it so suddenly, one would think that it was premeditated some time before. Declare openly the real matter of fact; with whom, in what place, if by word of mouth or letters, and by what channel? further, By whose advice did you write that fraudulent letter on your journey? Who assisted you, and for what reason did you write it? With whom did you correspond during your journey?

I did talk often, and at different times with the said *Kekin*, even before I received  
your

\* She was a *Finland* captive. It is said the Czar was so much pleased with the honesty of her confession, that he caused offer her a good sum of money, if she had a mind to marry: but that she refused it, saying, 'she had once been obliged to satisfy the will of a Prince to save her life from a dagger, but no other man shou'd ever come near her.'

your majesty's letters and returned answers. BOOK

The substance of his discourse was as follows: that if I chanced to go into some foreign country, I ought to continue there in some place, as much to live in peace as to be at a distance from all affairs. Nevertheless I was not very forward in putting that design in execution, but as I took journey for *Carlesbath*, *Kekin* said thus: 'As soon

' as you find yourself recovered, write to your father that you was advised by the physicians to use the waters in the spring; after which you may pass into *Holland*, thereafter through *France*, into *Italy*, and after this manner you may make your journey continue for several years.' I wrote to him from *Carlesbath* to have his advice, if I should then undertake what had been concerted betwixt us. 'He answered, How can you imagine to undertake that without your fathers consent? you ought to be afraid of offending him, therefore write to him, for his permission; but forget not your affairs.'

I knew not what he meant by these last words, but after I had given over the design of going into *Holland* and had come back to *St. Petersburg* (*Kekin* having been sent into banishment for some misdemeanours, but being returned again and pardoned), I had occasion to talk with him, when he asked

me

BOOK me if I had seen any person from the court  
 XII. of *France*? I told him no. He replied,  
 ~~~~~ ' you are in the wrong, you should have  
 ' spoke with some person belonging to that  
 ' court, the King is a Prince of a great soul,  
 ' he gives protection to other kings, and  
 ' would not have refused it to you.'

I asked him what he meant by that part of his letter, ' that I ought not to forget ' my affairs.' He answered, he meant that I should have retired into *France*, tho' he durst not write me so much; but that I might have found it out my self.

As to my flight, I never did deliberate on that subject with any; but having received your letter from *Copenhagen*, and seeing by it I could depart from St. *Petersburgh*, in obedience to your commands, without suspicion; and in consequence of the former communing betwixt *Kekin* and me, I resolved to go into the Emperor's dominions, or to *Venice* or *Swisserland*, without asking advice or discovering my design to any but *Affonassieff*, whom I informed that I was resolved to go and conceal my self for a time in some of these above-mentioned places, without letting him know which; not being myself fully determined.

I told him further; that I had formerly spoke on this subject with *Kekin*, who perhaps had found out a place for me, seeing he  
 was

was then in those parts, and when I should meet with him he would advise me to what place I should go, and if I should not meet with him, I would assuredly go into one or other of the forementioned. Book XII.

I never before this discoursed with *John Affonassieff* on this subject, or any other person except *Kekin*, either by word or writing, or any other means, not even with my domesticks. *Affonassieff* told me that he was resolved to keep my secret; 'but woe to us, added he, if you flinch;' therefore 'reflect well on what you do.'

When I met with *Kekin* at *Libaw*, I asked if he had found out a place for me? he told me he had: 'Go to *Vienna*,' said he, 'and put yourself under the Emperor's protection, he will not deliver you up.' I asked him what affair had taken him to *Vienna*, and if it was on my account? He told me, he had no business there but mine; that having asked leave of princess *Maria Alexowna* to go that place, she had allowed him, and at the same time desired him to persuade Prince *Alexander Profforosky* to return to his own family.

VOL. II.

P

I

Prince *Alexander Profforosky* was one of the young men of quality, the Czar first sent abroad; who after he had got a taste of the living in other countries, did not care for returning soon.

BOOK I asked him how I should behave, if any  
 XII. person were sent to meet me, either at *Dantzick*, or *Koningsberg*? He told me to escape in the night, and to take only one servant with me, happen to the baggage what might: as to the fraudulent letter, it was written at *Libaw* by *Kekins's* advice, and dated at *Koningsberg*, that it might not be suspected he had a hand in it; for he came and visited me openly. The letter was given to Prince *Shacoffskoy* captain of the *Simeinofskoy* regiment of guards, with orders to send it by the post; but the Captain knew nothing of our affairs, for the design of writing that letter was to stop any body from being sent to meet me.

*Kekin* also persuaded me to write a letter to *John Affonassieff* (who I said was in the knowledge of what had been concerted betwixt him and me), that he might upon sight follow me, and that he should find at *Dantzick*, at the post-office, an address where to find me. *Kekin* reasoned after this manner: ' if *Affonassieff* leaves *St. Petersburg*, ' this affair cannot be discovered, for except us two and him, no person knows ' any thing of the matter; as for me (continued he) my being absent from *St. Petersburg* when you left it, will make no ' body suspect me; but if *Affonassieff* stays there,

‘ there, I’m afraid he will not have discretion  
 ‘ enough to conceal it.’

BOOK  
 XII.

I told him I was afraid that *Affonassieff*,  
 would not leave St. *Petersburgh* on my  
 letter. (He replied), ‘ In that case you  
 ‘ should write him a second; by which it  
 ‘ might be understood that you had never  
 ‘ let him into the knowledge of the affair,  
 ‘ and that you had only taken that resoluti-  
 ‘ on after your departure from St. *Peters-*  
*burg*, and that he would not forget to  
 ‘ bring your jewels along with him.’ I do  
 not remember the name of the town where  
 he desired me to write to *Affonassieff* to join  
 me. *Kekin* added, ‘ I shall bid him shew  
 ‘ your letter to Prince *Menzekoff*, as if he  
 ‘ discovered to him your secret, which will  
 ‘ remove all suspicion of him.’

He further told me to write a letter of  
 thanks to Prince *Basil Dolgoruky* for his  
 friendship, promising to acknowledge it  
 when the time offered; ‘ for (said *Kekin*)  
 ‘ if they suspect me to have had a hand in  
 ‘ your flight I shall then expose your letter  
 ‘ to Prince *Basil*, as if I had intercepted it;  
 ‘ which will seem to show a concert betwixt  
 ‘ you and him, by your giving him thanks  
 ‘ for all civilities.’

*Kekin* took this letter with him; I know  
 not if he delivered it: he also desired me  
 to write a letter to Prince *Menzekoff* to thank  
 him

BOOK him for advising me to take my mistress a-  
 XII. long, and to desire him to give an order for  
 post-horses to *Affonassieff*; 'perhaps (added  
 ' *Kekin*) he will show this letter to your fa-  
 ' ther, who probably will suspect his having  
 ' had some knowledge of your flight.'

With regard to Prince *Menzekoff*, matters passed after this manner. As I went to see him before my departure, he asked me where I designed to leave my mistress? I told him I would take her with me the length of *Riga*, and from thence I would send her back to *St. Petersburg*. He said I would do better to take her with me the whole way. My design from the beginning was to do so, tho' I gave it out otherways, that they might not suspect my intentions: neither did I let her into the secret, lest she might through inadvertency discover any part of it. Prince *Menzekoff* knew nothing of my escape; neither did I communicate that design to Prince *Basil Dolgoruky*. At parting with *Kekin*, he begged I would write to him when I was out of danger, and do it after this manner, 'I passed happily  
 ' through *Dantzick* without danger from  
 ' the confederates;' write no more (said he) we'll understand the rest.

Accordingly, I wrote those letters from *Stuckgard*; and to remove all suspicion against the persons, I wrote to several others,  
 after

after the same manner, who were not in Book  
 the knowledge of my flight; particularly to XII.  
*Nicephorus Basomsky, Theodore Dubrofsky,* ~~~~~  
 and the Czarowich of *Siberia*.

The letters were all sent to *Riga*, to Prince *Peter Galitzin's* care, to forward them to *St. Petersburg*: he knew nothing of my flight. *Kekin* said moreover, at parting, 'If your father sends any person to persuade you to return, do it not; for if you do, he will certainly strike off your head publickly.'

IV. Did you receive no letters on your journey, or did you not keep correspondence with any person directly nor indirectly, either in *Russia*, or elsewhere, on what might concern you and me?

I received no letters on my journey, neither from *Russia* nor elsewhere, nor had any correspondence directly or indirectly, except the account I had from Count *Schonburn* at *Eherenberg*, shewing that I was under the protection of the Emperor, where I ought to live retired. Afterwards I had accounts that Mr. *Weseloffsky* had spoke of me at *Vienna*, and that the imperial resident at *St. Petersburg* had wrote, that after my departure, great enquiry was made among my domestics; also, that there was a mutiny in the army in *Mechlinburgh*, particularly among the guards, which were  
 mostly

BOOK mostly composed of nobility; that they had  
 XII. a design against your majesty's life, and  
 were to send the Empress *Katharine*, with  
 her son, to the place where the first Em-  
 press is confined, who was to be brought back  
 to *Moscow*, and myself set on the throne:  
 this letter is among my other papers with  
 my baggage. I received another letter from  
 Count *Schonburn*, on the subject of my  
 journey from *Naples*: besides these I ne-  
 ver had any accounts, nor knew what was  
 doing, but what I could learn from the  
 public papers.

V. When, and for what end was the  
*Greek* priest along with you?

There never was any *Greek* priest with  
 me, from the time I left *St. Petersburg*,  
 until Messrs. *Tolstoy* and *Romanzoff* came to  
 me at *Naples*.

VI. What was the substance of the let-  
 ter you said the imperial minister forced you  
 to write? To whom did you give it? And  
 is it true that he compelled you to write it?

Count *Schonburn's* Secretary, Mr. *Keil*,  
 forced me to write letters to the senate  
 and the archbishops, alledging there were  
 accounts in *Russia* that I was dead, and  
 others believed that I was taken and sent  
 into *Siberia*; 'therefore, write (said he)  
 'and let them know how you do, or we'll  
 'have nothing to do with you.' So that  
 being

being threatned by the Secretary after that BOOK  
 manner, I wrote to the senate and the two XII.  
 archbishops, viz. of *Rostow* and *Kouditz*,  
 much in the following words. ‘ I believe

‘ you, as well as all others, were much sur-  
 ‘ prized at my departure unknown to every  
 ‘ body: it was the ill usage I met with,  
 ‘ which was pushed to that height, as to  
 ‘ force me into a convent; but GOD in his  
 ‘ goodness has taken care of me. I am  
 ‘ under the protection of a great Prince, till  
 ‘ it please GOD to dispose matters, that I  
 ‘ may return in safety: in the mean time,  
 ‘ I hope you will not forget me; and if  
 ‘ any of those who wish me out of the  
 ‘ world publish accounts that I am dead,  
 ‘ give no credit to them, but be assured  
 ‘ that I am in perfect health, thanks to  
 ‘ GOD, and my benefactors, who protect  
 ‘ me, and who have promised not to aban-  
 ‘ don, but to assist me in all my wants. I  
 ‘ am, while I live, full of good wishes to-  
 ‘ wards you and the whole country.’

This was the substance of the letters I delivered to the Secretary, who told me he was going to *Vienna*, and would take care to forward them; after which, I was sent to the castle of *St. Elmi*.

On my arrival at *Vienna*, I addressed myself to Count *Schonburn* for protection. He told me, he would go and acquaint the  
 Emperor:

BOOK Emperor: 'in the mean time (said he), take  
 XII. 'care that \*Mr. *Wesselofsky* does not see  
 ~~~~~ 'you.' On his return from the Emperor,  
 he told me, that he was not determined  
 about me, but had ordered him to confer  
 with Prince *Eugene* and Count *Staremborg*.  
 It was then resolved to take me under pro-  
 tection, and send me to some castle at a di-  
 stance: the Count added, 'You cannot con-  
 'tinue at this place, where you will be  
 'immediately known, especially to Mr.  
 ' *Wesselofsky*: the Emperor will not aban-  
 'don you, but on the contrary, on your  
 'father's death, will assist you with an  
 'armed force to mount the throne.' I  
 told him, I did not want that, but only  
 the Emperor's protection.

VII. Declare to us, and discover all you  
 know, that may have any relation to this  
 affair, tho' it be not expressed here, and  
 purge yourself as if you were at confession:  
 if you conceal any the least thing that I  
 may hereafter come to the knowledge of,  
 blame yourself; for in that case, the par-  
 don that was granted you shall be null and  
 void.

I shall declare all that I know that has  
 any relation to this affair. Prince *Menze-  
 koff* gave me a thousand ducats, and the  
 senators as much, when I took leave of  
 them:

\*Mr. *Wesselofsky* was the Czar's minister at Vienna.

them: I borrowed also from *Illia Isacow*, Book  
 five thousand ducats in gold, and two thou- XII.  
 sand in silver: neither Prince *Menzekoff*,  
 the senators, nor *Illia Isacow*, knew any  
 thing of my design. I only told them, on  
 my departure from St. *Petersburgh*, that I  
 was going to meet you at *Copenhagen*. It  
 was *Affonassieff* that advised me to borrow  
 money from *Illia Isacow*: what I heard  
 further, at different times, and on different  
 occasions, is as follows. The Czarowich  
 of *Siberia* told me, that he had heard from  
*Michael Samarin*, that there would be soon  
 a change of circumstances: 'Will you be  
 kind to me (said he) when it is well with  
 you? for all that *Samarin* prognosticates  
 actually happeneth:' he did not explain  
 to me what this change would be. The  
 same person told me in *March* (1716), that  
 there would be a change on the 1st of *A-*  
*pril*; and when I asked him what this  
 change would be? He said, either the Czar  
 would die, or St. *Petersburgh* be destroy-  
 ed; and that he had seen it in a dream.  
 After these days were past, I asked him  
 how it came that none of these things had  
 happened? He said, they might happen  
 some other year on that very day; and that  
 he did not tell me the year, but the day.

*Nicephor Wasemskhy*, passing from *Mos-*  
*cow* to *Thorne*, told me that he had heard

BOOK from *Alexander Sergeoff*, that the Czar  
 XII. could not live above five years; but he did  
 ~~~~~ not tell me his reason for so saying.

As I was in the neighbourhood of *Stetin*,  
*Prince Basil Dolgoruky* being on horseback,  
 spoke to me, and said, that if the Empress  
*Katharine* was not with the Czar, he could  
 not live with him, on account of his severe  
 and harsh temper; and that for his part, he  
 would be one of the first to betray him,  
 All which has declared,

*Your most humble*

*Servant and Son,*

ALEXIS.

Besides this confession, the Czarowich  
 gave another writing by way of supplement,  
 mentioning some points he had forgot.

Being in conversation with *Theodore Dub-  
 rofsky*, on my departure, he said, 'Are you  
 going to your father? Go in the name of  
 'GOD.' I told him I was going, but GOD  
 knows if it be to him, or elsewhere. He  
 replied, 'Many in your situation have found  
 'their safety in their flight.' I believe your  
 'friends will not desert you.'

*Naritskin* having met me betwixt *Memel*  
 and *Koningsberg*, said I was ill advised to  
 return, that I should have continued where  
 I

I was. ‘ Those who are faithful to you (said Book  
 ‘ he) are of that opinion, and *Kekin* wrote XII.  
 ‘ you as much; but at present there is no  
 ‘ help for it, things must take their course.’

*John Affonassief* before my departure, when I informed him of my design, brought me orders to sign about my domestic affairs, as I used to do before I took a journey. I asked what was the use of signing any thing of that kind, seeing I was resolved not to return? He said, for his justification. He likewise proposed that I should send towards *Copenhagen*, some part of my equipage: it was likewise he who advised me to carry my mistress along, but that neither she, nor any of my domestics should know any thing of my real design; all which I did by his advice.—All this the Czarowich declared, after the Czar had begun to examine the criminals, lest he should have come to the knowledge thereof from others.

The Czarowich discovered to the Czar some of the persons who had advised him to escape. He wrote their names with his own hand, but did not name all. He also concealed the rebellion, and treasonable practices he was carrying on; which was clearly made out by many of their own confessions.

BOOK XII. He also concealed several letters he had received from *Russia*, and from the imperial minister Count *Schonburn*, having only acknowledged the receipt of two at *Ehrenberg*; but when his mistress and his equipage arrived, all these letters were found among his papers. Count *Schonburn* in his third letter, acquainted the Czarowich that in *Russia* it was currently reported he was lost, being forced to flee from his father's cruelty; that others said, he was killed by his order; and that some gave out as if he had been murdered by robbers on the highway; in which letter he inclosed another, (written at St. *Petersburgh*) advising the unhappy Prince to keep himself as private as possible, for that the Czar his father would not fail, after his return from *Holland*, to cause make an exact search for him.

Nevertheless the Czarowich, in his confession to his father, made no mention of this letter and advice; neither was it true that the Secretary *Keil* had forced him to write letters to the senate, and bishops. He did it of his own accord: the copies of all these letters were found in his baggage.

The letters to the senate and archbishops, are much the same with what he declared in his confession; but to the archbishops, he adds, 'I believe you are not ignorant, that

‘ that this proceeds from the same person BOOK  
 ‘ who treated my mother after the same XII.  
 ‘ manner:’ (meaning the design of sending ~  
 him to the convent) then, speaking of his  
 return, ‘ he begs the Archbishop not to a-  
 ‘ abandon him *at present*.’ The word *at*  
*present* was twice blotted out, and twice re-  
 stored.

Thereafter, when the Czarowich came to understand that many of the criminals had confessed several articles he had omitted in his first confession, he presented another to the Czar.

### The CONFESSIONS of others.

*Theodore Dubrofsky*, being interrogated, acknowledged, that he was in the knowledge of the Czarowich’s flight, and had often communed with him on that subject, and had advised him thereto; tho’ the Czarowich, as he was interrogated, declared, that *Dubrofsky* knew nothing of his flight, nor of his conferences with *Kekin*.

*Simon Naritskin* also declared, that having met with the Czarowich betwixt *Memel* and *Koningsberg*, he told him from *Kekin*, that he did ill to return, and that he could have remained where he was.

Likeways, the Bishop of *Rostow* acknowledged, that both the deposed Empress, and  
Princess

BOOK Princess *Maria Alexowna*, were in the secret of the Czarowich's flight, and designs.—

~~~~~ All which, and much more did the Czarowich conceal at his examination.

The 27th of *February*, in a writing the Czarowich presented to his father, he confessed, that having one day met with the Princess *Maria Alexowna*, their discourse turned upon the treatment of his mother, the deposed Empress; but he did not own that they had any knowledge of his flight.

*John Affonassieff* and *Theodore Eberlakoff*, declared, that the Czarowich had been heard to swear he would cause impale Prince *Menzekoff*, as also his sister-in-law *Barbara Arsenceff*, and *Annise Tolstoy*; and being in passion one day against Count *Golofkin* the Chancellor, and Prince *George Trubelskoy*, who had persuaded him to marry his deceased spouse, the devil of a woman, (as he called her): he swore, that nothing but death could prevent his causing them to pay for it; and that he should cause cut off *Alexander Golofkin's* head by the hand of the executioner. *Affonassieff* asking the Czarowich how he durst speak after that manner? he answered, ' I spit upon all  
' others; may the common people prosper:  
' when I find my time, in my father's absence, I shall speak a word into the ears  
' of the archbishops, and they to the inferior

rior clergy and curates, who will tell their parishoners; and these I am sure will bring me to the throne, in spite of all opposers.' He declared further, that on many occasions the Czarowich used to say, 'Remember my words, you shall see that St. *Petersburgh* shall not be ours long; and that he would choose to be in a fever, rather than in company with his father, on any extraordinary occasion.' *Eberlakof* declared, he heard him say, he was at a great loss that he had not followed *Kekin's* advice, in making an escape some time before into *France*, where he would have passed his time with greater tranquillity and pleasure; nay, rather in the convent of St. *Michael* at *Kiow*, then here. He also declared, that the Czarowich would often take physic, and counterfeit an indisposition, rather than accompany his father on any journey, or public occasion.

The Czarowich's mistress being interrogated about letters, and of all she knew of his affairs, declared, that she had seen the Czarowich write letters whilst in the castle of St. *Elmi*, particularly one to an Archbishop in the *Russian* language; but to whom she could not tell, not having seen the direction; and that he had also wrote letters to the Emperor, complaining of the Czar: that she had heard him say, on the report

BOOK report of the mutiny of the *Russian* troops  
 XII. in *Mechlinburgh*, ‘Do you not see that  
 ~~~~~ ‘GOD Almighty is fighting for us?’ And  
 as to his flight, she had heard him say,  
 that four persons were in the knowledge of  
 of it; amongst whom was the Princess *Maria Alexowna*, whom he told at parting, he  
 was going to abscond; that he was displea-  
 sed with his father’s courtiers, and would  
 turn them all off, and chuse new ones to  
 his own liking; that when he used to read  
 in the *Gazettes* that all was quiet at *St. Petersburgh*, he said, ‘This means something,  
 ‘my father is either dead, or there is a  
 ‘rebellion some where;’ that he had said,  
 whilst at *Eherenberg*, he would retire into  
 some hanse-town, having been advised there-  
 to by *Dubrofsky* and others.

The Cza-  
 rowich ex-  
 amined a-  
 gain.

The Czarowich on the 20th of *May*,  
 being questioned on these points, owned  
 that he had wrote the Emperor, complain-  
 ing of his father, but that he had not sent  
 the letter; and denied his having written  
 from the castle to the archbishops; but  
 owned his acquainting Princess *Maria* with  
 his flight, in these terms: ‘I design to make  
 ‘my escape;’ but that he did not care to dis-  
 cover her out of pity; that he had design-  
 edly concealed *Dubrofsky*, because when  
 they conferred together, there was no body  
 present: he also declared, that what he had  
 said

said as to the clergy and commonalty was BOOK  
when he was drunk, and that he hardly XII.  
remembered it; also, that he was in passion ~  
when he spoke of Count *Gollofkin*, his son,  
and Prince *Trubetskoy*; that all the world  
knew he had married of choice, which can  
be sufficiently proven by the repeated letters  
he had wrote to his father for his consent;  
that he had sometimes taken medicines pur-  
posely to make himself sick, to shun his fa-  
ther's company. That he had not heard of  
the sermon preached at *Moscow* by the Arch-  
bishop of *Resan*, till he was informed there-  
of by Prince *Basil Dolgoruky* and *Theodore*  
*Glebow*, who acquainted him that the Arch-  
bishop had spoke disadvantageously of him,  
and that the senators had obliged him to  
give them a copy of the sermon. He own-  
ed that letters had passed betwixt him and  
that prelate, tho' seldom, to prevent suspi-  
cion.

He said concerning the letters he had  
wrote to the senate and archbishops, he  
thought that would give no ground for an  
accusation against them, they being so nu-  
merous, and that nothing could be made  
out against them, since he had not commu-  
nicated any thing of his design to them;  
and that when he wrote the archbishops  
concerning his returning, he meant it only  
after his father's death.

BOOK In the Czarowich's second confession,  
XII. (which was emitted about the middle of *May*)

~~~~ he declared, that Lieutenant-general *Bower*, who was his friend, being in *Poland* with his command, at the time of his escape, and believing that his father had but short time to live, (having had accounts he had fallen ill of an epilepsy) he consequently judged that he could not hold out above two years; in which event, he could easily go from the Emperor's dominions into *Poland*; and from thence, being joined by *Bower*, he could march into the *Ukraine*; where he was persuaded they all would join, and declare for him; and that at *Moscow*, the Princess *Maria*, the archbishops, and all ranks of people, would do the same. Moreover, that he was resolved not to return during his father's life, but after the manner he did, on promise of his most gracious pardon.——The contrary of all which was clearly made out, as will appear hereafter.

The Czarowich was examined thereafter on the following articles, drawn up by the Czar.

I. Who of the laity were in the knowledge of your design, and advised you thereto? What passed betwixt you and them on that subject?

I know of none that had any knowledge of my ill design, but those I have already mentioned. BOOK XII.

II. What *Affonassieff* had declared concerning the rebellion, was it to be in my time or after?

When I spoke with *Affonassieff* on the subject of the rebellion, I was in drink, and believed there was to be one.

III. What is the meaning of the word *at present*, mentioned in your letter to, the archbishops?

The meaning of it was, that they should disperse my letter amongst the people, which I believed would engage them the more to me; but on second thoughts, not thinking that word proper, I defaced it.

IV. When you was informed that there was a revolt amongst the troops in *Mechlinburgh*, did you not rejoice thereat, and said, 'GOD does not allow affairs to go on according to my father's wishes?'

When I was told of the revolt in *Mechlinburgh*, I said indeed, that GOD would not permit things to go on as my father wished. And if these accounts had been true, I would have joined the male-contents if they had called me; but I had not as yet taken that resolution, nor would I have gone, unless I had found them strong enough: I moreover thought they would not declare

BOOK for me, so long as you lived; that they  
 XII. were resolved to take your life, and not to  
 ~~~~~ dethrone you; tho' even in your lifetime,  
 if they had called me, I probably would  
 have joined them.

Seeing the Czarowich in this last answer, owned that he had entertained criminal thoughts against his father, if occasion had offered, even during his life, the Czar ordered Messrs. *Tolstoy* and *Butterlin* to examine him further; particularly on the expression '*at present*, not to abandon him.'

The Czarowich declared, that it was in the sense he had already said; and since he had acknowledged in the last article, that if the male-contents had called him he would have joined them at any time, tho' during his father's life; that he had inserted the word '*at present*', in the view that when things were made public amongst the people, they might declare for him.

His majesty the Czar, in his letter to his son, had promised not only to pardon him for his flight, but also to grant him a general indemnity for all he had been guilty of before; but still on condition he made a true and ample discovery of his accomplices, of whatsoever quality or rank; declaring at the same time, that if he concealed either persons or facts, his pardon should be of no effect.

Nevertheless,

Nevertheless, it has been clearly made **Book** out by the preceeding examinations, and **XII.** the confession of others, as well as his own, that he concealed not only his associates, but the principal facts, and his pernicious designs of joining the rebels even in his father's life-time; which 'tis probable he never would have acknowledged, had not his accomplices owned those crimes before he mentioned them.

But that all the world might be satisfied, the Czar examined his son a-new, on all the crimes which had been proved against him; and letters were produced under his own hand discovering the facts. The Czarowich at last, in presence of the whole assembly of the states and ecclesiastics, acknowledged himself guilty of all that was advanced against him. The Czarowich owns his guilt.

The audience being ended, and the Czarowich carried back to his confinement, his majesty declared his will to the clergy in the following manner:

' You have been witnesses to an ample deduction of crimes, almost unprecedented, whereof my son is guilty, and has committed against us, his father and sovereign. Tho' according to all divine and human laws, particularly these of *Russia*, which exclude all jurisdiction, even amongst private persons, betwixt a father and

BOOK ' and his son, we have an absolute and un-  
 XII. ' controulable power to judge our son for  
 ~~~~~ ' his crimes, according to our will and plea-  
 The ' sure, without asking counsel of any; yet  
 Czar's de- ' since men commonly do not see so clearly  
 clarations ' into their own affairs as they do into other  
 to the me- ' peoples, and that the most expert physici-  
 tropolitan ' ans do not prescribe medicines to them-  
 and arch- ' selves, but apply to others: so we having  
 bishops, ' the fear of GOD before our eyes, do lay  
 &c. ' before you our distemper, and ask advice,  
 ' for fear of eternal punishment, not know-  
 ' ing exactly the nature of the disease.

' We have given our oath before GOD  
 ' and his judgment, to pardon our son, which  
 ' we have since confirmed by word of  
 ' mouth, in case he told the truth.

' And tho' our son has violated his pro-  
 ' mise, in concealing the most important  
 ' facts, and designs of rebellion against us,  
 ' his sovereign and father; yet that we may  
 ' proceed solidly, and fulfil our obligations  
 ' as far as we are able, both before GOD and  
 ' man; and tho' the affair in question does  
 ' not belong to the spiritual jurisdiction,  
 ' but to the civil, to whose impartial sen-  
 ' tence we have remitted it this day by our  
 ' declaration: nevertheless, we want to pro-  
 ' cure to ourselves, all the light that ought  
 ' to be had in such cases.

' We

‘ We remember that part of the word of B O O K  
 ‘ G O D, where we are enjoined to ask the XII.  
 ‘ sentiments of the church, to know what  
 ‘ G O D ordains, as it is written in the xvii.  
 ‘ chap. of *Exodus*. We desire of you, arch-  
 ‘ bishops, and other ecclesiastics, as doctors,  
 ‘ and interpreters of the word of G O D,  
 ‘ not to pronounce judgment, but to exa-  
 ‘ mine, and give unto us right instruction  
 ‘ according to holy writ, in the like cases,  
 ‘ to know what kind of punishment ought  
 ‘ to be inflicted on our son for his crimes,  
 ‘ (which resemble that of *Absalom*) ac-  
 ‘ cording to examples and precepts in holy  
 ‘ writ. These instructions you are to give  
 ‘ us, subscribed by each of you, that we  
 ‘ may be sufficiently enlightened in this af-  
 ‘ fair, to the discharge of our conscience.

‘ We therefore put our confidence in you  
 ‘ as guardians of the divine laws, agreeable  
 ‘ to your dignity, as faithful pastors of the  
 ‘ Christian flock, and well affected towards  
 ‘ your country. We moreover adjure you  
 ‘ by the judgments of G O D, and by your  
 ‘ consecration, to proceed in this affair with-  
 ‘ out dissimulation and fear.’

The Czar’s declaration to his ministers,  
 senators, and the states, both civil and mi-  
 litary, was the same with the former, till  
 near the end, where he says: ‘ I desire  
 ‘ you to think seriously on this affair, to  
 ‘ examine

The de-  
 claration  
 to the se-

BOOK ' examine it with attention, and judge what  
 XII. ' punishment our son's rebellion and crimes  
 ~~~~~ ' deserve, without flattery, or being afraid  
 nators, ' that if you should adjudge to him a mo-  
 &c. much ' derate punishment I should be offended;  
 like the o- ' for I swear to you by the great GOD;  
 ther. ' and his judgment, that you have absolute-  
 ' ly nothing to fear.

• Make no reflection neither, that you  
 ' are to give sentence on the son of your  
 ' sovereign; but without regard to persons,  
 ' do justice, and lose not your own souls;  
 ' nor mine, that we may have nothing to  
 ' reproach ourselves with at the terrible  
 ' judgment day, and that our country may  
 ' suffer no prejudice.'

On the 16th of *June*, the privy-counsel-  
 lor Mr. *Tolstoy*, declared by his majesty's  
 orders to the ministers, senators, and the  
 rest of the states there assembled; that see-  
 ing he had charged them with the process  
 of his son *Alexis*, that they might pro-  
 nounce judgment; he wanted it should be  
 done in all requisite form, and after exami-  
 nation; therefore his majesty authorized  
 them, and gave them power, to examine  
 the Czarowich *Alexis*, not only on the  
 points already discussed, but after what man-  
 ner they thought proper.'

The ministers, counsellors, and the other  
 states, after having received this express or-  
 der,

der, and considered the points already discussed, agreed to interrogate the Czarowich accordingly. And having cited him to appear before the tribunal, they rose up and said to him, they were extremely sorry for the occasion of their meeting, but that having received orders from his majesty, to interrogate him on several points that remained undetermined, without having regard to his being the son of their most gracious sovereign, they intreated he would be pleased to answer without reserve, to the points they were to lay before him.

I. How he came to say to his mistress that there was a rebellion in the neighbourhood of *Moscow*? Was it not by a letter from *Bleyer*, inclosed to *Schonburn*? that he should declare from whom he had these accounts.

II. On what occasion had he spoke to *John Affonassieff* of the confidence he had in the commonalty? And at what time he was to put in execution these words, 'When I see my time,' in absence of my father, I'll sound a word in the ear of 'the Archbishop?' In what Archbishop did he confide most? for his mistress declared, that he spoke very much in favour of an Archbishop, without naming him.

BOOK III. For what reason, and on what  
 XH. grounds did he say, 'that St. *Petersburgh*  
 ' should not belong ours?'

The Czarowich replied to the first, thus :  
*Bleyer* the imperial resident at St. *Petersburgh*, wrote to Count *Schonburn* Vice-chancellor of the empire, that \* *Abraham Lupochin* had desired him to come and see him, and had asked where I then was, and if he had no accounts of me? giving him at the same time to understand, that they were at St. *Petersburgh* in great concern for me; and that in and about the city of *Moscow*, they were already in motion, there being many different accounts of me.

This letter of *Bleyer's* to Count *Schonburn* was sent by the Count to the Czarowich, who after reading it, put it in the fire. It was from this letter that the Czarowich had said to his mistress, 'there is already a rebellion about *Moscow*.'

As to the other points which *John Affonassieff* had confessed and charged the Czarowich with, 'that he would speak a word in the ear of the Archbishop, &c.' he said it was only, that he understood from most persons that he was liked by the populace, particularly from *Nicephor Basemskoy*, and his confessor *James*; that when they

\* Uncle to the Czarowich by the mother.

they drank his health, it was always under the name of The hopes of *Russia*, and that his saying, 'St. *Petersburgh* would not be ours long,' meant that the *Swedes* might get it restored, as the *Turks* had got *Asoph*.

After which, the Czarowich being dismissed, the assembly proceeded to examine the scriptures, both the Old and New Testament; as also the constitutions of the empire, civil and military, applicable to the present case, to judge what punishment these transgressions deserved..

The assembly  
search  
the scriptures,  
&c.

Out of the Old Testament, *Leviticus*, chap. xx. *Duteronomy*, chap. xxi.

Out of the New Testament, St. *Matthew*, chap. xv. ver. 1. St. *Mark*, chap. vii. ver. 9. *Romans*, i. ver. 28. *Ephesians*, vi. ver. 1.

From the constitutions of the *Russian* empire, Stat. I. 'If any person forms a bad design against the Czar, prejudicial to him any manner of way, and that it can be made appear, he designed to put his pernicious design in execution, he is after being convicted, to suffer death.'

Stat. II. 'If any person raises forces against the Czar, with a view to destroy him, and usurp the throne, either by intestine or foreign war; also all who either join or keep correspondence with such a person, are to be put to death, after the treason is made appear.'

BOOK From *Peter* the Great, his military laws,  
XII. printed at St. *Petersburgh*, Anno 1717.

chap. III. art. 19. ' If any person raises  
' troops, or takes arms against his majesty,  
' or forms a design to take him prisoner,  
' or to kill him, or does any manner of vio-  
' lence to his person, he, together with all  
' these who have contributed thereto, ei-  
' ther by assistance or advice, any manner  
' of way, are to be hanged, then quarter-  
' ed, after the treason is made manifest.

' In the like manner are they to be pu-  
' nished who have had any such design,  
' tho' they have not been able to put it in  
' execution; as also those who have had a-  
' ny knowledge thereof, and have not dis-  
' covered the same.'

These extracts from the divine and civil  
law being read and considered, it was una-  
nimously resolved by the ministers to collect  
the opinion of every one of the judges sepa-  
rately; after which they gave their own,  
and the whole assembly unanimously agreed  
in their sentence, ' that the Czarowich for  
' the crimes alledged and made out against  
' him, deserved death.'

On the 21st of *June*, his majesty ordered  
Mr. *Tolstoy* privy-counsellor, to lay before  
his ministry and senators assembled, the  
judgment of the clergy as follows. ' Ha-  
' ving reflected on the great crimes commit-  
' ted

' ted by a son, who, after the example of BOOK  
 ' *Abſalom* has rebelled againſt his father, XII.  
 ' and on the perſon offended, who as a fa-  
 ' ther, and a ſovereign, has abſolute power The judg-  
 ' over his ſon, we dare not meddle in this ment of  
 ' affair, further than to give advice, it be- the clergy.  
 ' longing to the civil jurifdiction, and not  
 ' to the eccleſiaſtick. Beſides, that the ab-  
 ' ſolute power eſtabliſhed in the *Ruſſian* em-  
 ' pire, being a monarchy, is conſequently  
 ' not ſubjected to the judgment of ſubjects,  
 ' but that of the ſovereign, who has power  
 ' to act ſolely by his own good-will and  
 ' pleaſure, without the intervention of any  
 ' inferiors.

' Nevertheless, ſeeing we are commanded  
 ' by our moſt gracious ſovereign for his in-  
 ' ſtruction, to ſearch and find out ſtatutes,  
 ' applicable to the affair in queſtion; there-  
 ' fore in obedience to his orders, we the  
 ' under-written eccleſiaſticks, aſſembled in  
 ' the imperial capital city of *St. Peters-*  
 ' *burgh*, have gathered from the holy ſcrip-  
 ' tures, what we thought moſt applicable  
 ' to the preſent dreadful and unhappy af-  
 ' fair.

' The ſon of *Noah* was curſed, and con-  
 ' demned to ſerve his brothers, for having  
 ' only mocked his father, *Gen.* ix.

' GOD ſays in the commandments, "Ho-  
 ' nour your father and your mother, that  
 ' " your

BOOK " your days may be long in the land."

XII. ' *Exodus* xx.



" You shall not curse the prince of your people." *Exod.* xxii. " He that curses his father, or his mother, shall be punished with death." *Exod.* xxi. *Levit.* xx.

' JESUS CHRIST says the same, *Matth.* xv. *Mark* vii. " If a man has a rebellious and insolent son, who will not submit to the commands of his father nor his mother, he shall be stoned to death." *Deut.* xxi. " The eye that insults his father, and despises his mother, &c. *Prov.* xxx.

" Honour your father, both in words and actions." *Eccles.* iii. The history of *Absalom* in *2 Kings* xv.

' JESUS CHRIST was subjected to his father *Joseph*, and to his mother, *Luke* xxii. He likewise ordered tribute to be paid unto *Cæsar*.'

With a great deal more to this purpose, out of the scriptures, and somewhat from *Chrysostome*; after which they conclude, in humbly submitting all to the Czar's consideration, saying, ' If his majesty incline to punish the criminal according to his actions, he has before his eyes examples from the Old and New Testaments: if he will shew mercy, he has the example of JESUS CHRIST, who received the disobedient on their repentance, and pardoned the wo-

man

‘ man taken in adultery, who by the law **BOOK**  
 ‘ should have been stoned to death; also **XII.**  
 ‘ the example of *David*, who would have ~~~~~  
 ‘ saved his son *Absalom*.

‘ After all, the heart of the Czar (add  
 ‘ they), is in the hands of **GOD**, let him  
 ‘ choose the part to which **GOD** shall di-  
 ‘ rect him.’

This judgment or opinion, was signed by  
 all the ecclesiastics present, the metropoli-  
 tan of *Resan* at their head. Upon which, <sup>The final</sup>  
 sentence of death was pronounced against <sup>sentence.</sup>  
 the Czarowich at *St. Petersburg*, the 24th  
 of *June* 1718, and signed by one hundred  
 and twenty-four, ministers, senators, gene-  
 ral officers, and others: Prince *Menzekoff*  
 stands first in the list.

His majesty being informed of the sen-  
 tence passed against his son, would not im-  
 mediately declare whether he would shew  
 clemency, or severity; but ordered the sen-  
 tence to be made known to the criminal,  
 who being naturally of weak spirits, and sur-  
 prized with the horror of such a destiny, fell  
 into such convulsions, that with difficulty he  
 recovered so far as to be able to beg his par-  
 don of his father, before most of the mini-  
 stry and senators; which he granted: but all  
 the physicians could do, was not able to re-  
 store him to his health, so that on the 6th of <sup>The Cza-</sup>  
*July* he expired. His corpse was exposed <sup>rowich's</sup>  
 from <sup>death.</sup>

BOOK from the 8th to the 10th, in the church of XII. the *Trinity*; after which he was interred, near the Princess his spouse, with all the ceremonies usual on such occasions, the Czar and all the court witnessing the interment.

This event being one of the most extraordinary that has happened in many ages, some took the liberty to condemn, and others to justify the Czar's conduct. Some think his son was poisoned, others that he was blooded to death; but many believed that the horror of the sentence threw him into such convulsions, that there was no possibility of his recovery.

His Czarish majesty was at pains to vindicate his conduct to the world, as may be seen by his memorial to foreign courts.

The accomplices  
put to  
death.

Many of the Czarowich's accomplices and counsellors were on this occasion put to death, particularly the \* metropolitan of *Resan*, his confessor *James*, Prince *Gagarin*, *Kekin*,

\* The Czar was exceedingly prejudiced against this metropolitan, for having so vehemently opposed his forcing the Empress *Eudoxia* into the convent, and telling him in plain terms, that he could not be silent in a matter that regarded religion so near: for besides the illegality of the thing, it was giving very bad example to his subjects, and that all who did so, were *ipso facto* excommunicate. The Czar for many years had regard to this remonstrance, but at last broke through all rules, and married the Empress *Katharine* publicly, Anno 1710; which the zealous metropolitan still opposed, and in his public exhortations exclaimed against, as irregular, uncanonical and unchristian; so that when it was

*Kekin*, with many more of the clergy and Book laity, and even ladies of the first quality, XII. some beheaded, others broke upon the wheel; many more punished with the knout and battogues; besides those who were exiled into *Siberia*; all of whom had their estates and effects confiscated. The disgraced Empress, mother of the unhappy Czarowich, was sent to pass the rest of her days in a convent on the lake *Ladoga*, and Princess *Maria Alexowna*, to the strong castle of *Slutelburg*.

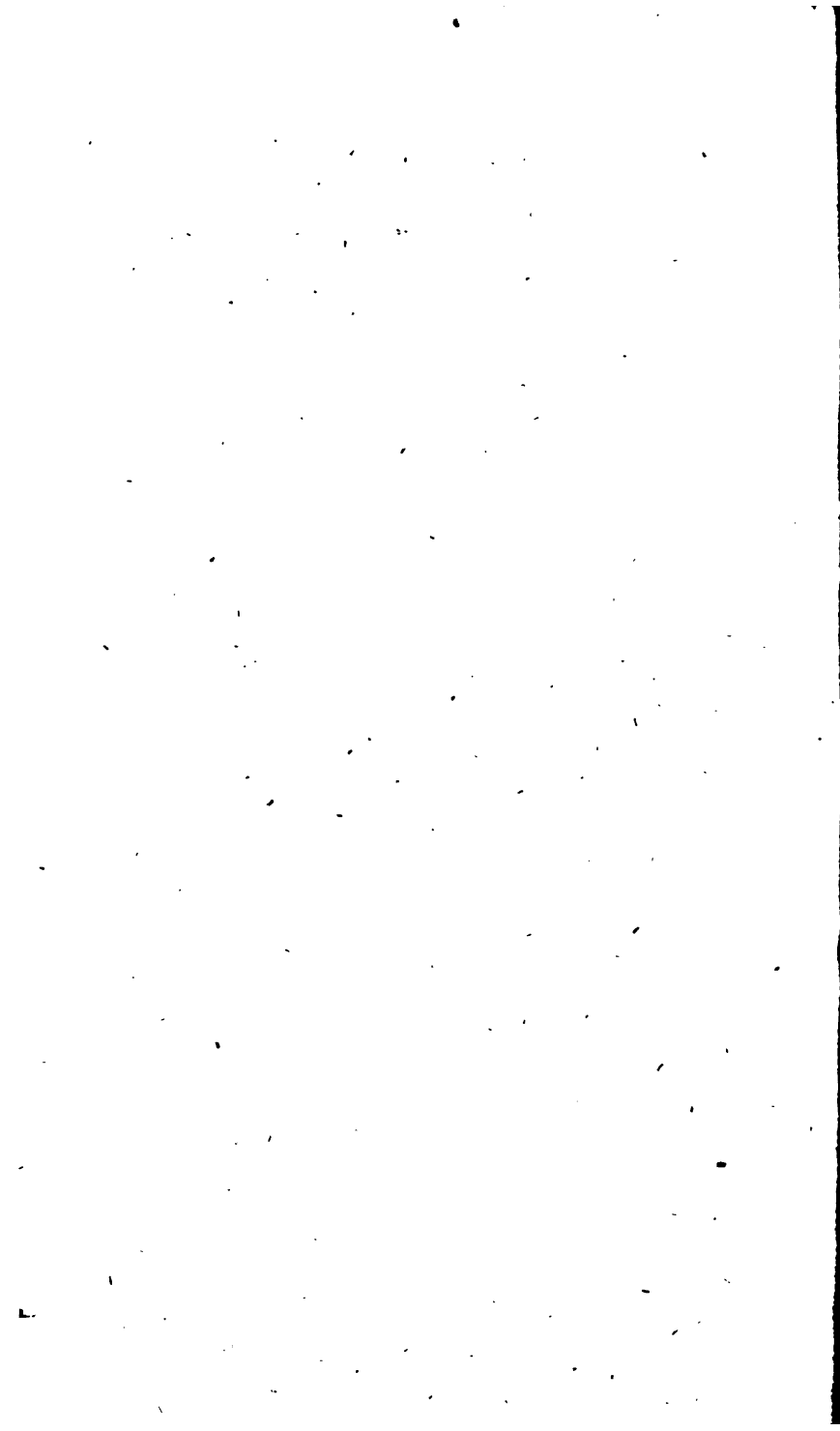
made appear he kept a correspondence with the Czarowich *Alexis*, though not criminal, he was condemned to lose his head. The good metropolitan acted in this like another *Ambrose*.

*End of the Twelfth Book.*

VOL. II.

T

THE



T H E

H I S T O R Y

O F

P E T E R the G R E A T,

E M P E R O R of R U S S I A.

---

B O O K XIII.

**T**HE Czar, tho' much taken up with **Book** the process against the Czarowich **A. XIII.** *lexis*, and his accomplices, was not unmindful of his other affairs: having conferred <sup>1718.</sup> with Baron *Gortz*, the King of *Sweden's* prime minister, a person of great capacity and resolution, they came pretty near an agreement. The Czar, who heartily desired peace, did not altogether reject *Gortz's* proposals: but the question was, how this peace could be concluded without including his allies? The King of *Sweden* was for a separate one with the Czar, because since he was to yield the most part of the conquests, (reserving to himself only *Finland*) he pro-

BOOK XIII. posed by an alliance with his Czarish majesty, not only to recover his other countries possessed by *Denmark*, *Prussia* and *Hanover*, but also to make up his losses off one or other of them. This was Baron *Gortz's* scheme, who had nothing in his view but the interest of his master: so plenipotentiaries were first appointed to meet at *Abo*; to which place the Czar sent (with full powers) General *James Bruce* and Baron *Osterman*: but the *Swedish* plenipotentiaries not appearing, the Czar concluded that the King of *Sweden* was pursuing other designs, and therefore resolved on a descent upon *Sweden*, with an army of forty thousand men. In order thereto, he recalled his troops from *Mechlenburgh*, leaving only in that country about four thousand foot and dragoons.

The  
Czar's pre-  
parations  
in order to  
a peace  
with *Sweden*.

In the mean time, Baron *Gortz* arrived at *Revel* with his Czarish majesty's passport, together with Count *Gyllenberg*; and on the 17th of *May*, they repaired to the isle of *Allandt*, to which place the conferences were transferred, and where houses were built for their accommodation. The Czar at the same time advanced with his fleet towards the island of *Hango*, without undertaking any thing that could disturb the negotiations: from *Hango* he repaired with his fleet to *Abo*, that he might be at hand

to procure the speedy conclusion of the **BOOK** treaty; from which he had so great assurance of peace, that he agreed to the exchange of Marshal *Renschild*, with Prince *James Dolgoruky*, who had been detained prisoner since the first affair before *Narva*. **XIII.**

Baron *Gortz* went to and again to acquaint his master with what was doing, and to persuade him to approve of the plan agreed upon at *Allandt*; by which the Czar was to remain peaceable possessor of *Livonia*, *Eastonia*, *Ingria* and a part of *Carrelia*, with the whole great dutchy of *Finland*, and all to the north of it. *Gortz* assured the Czar that he would prevail with his master the King of *Sweden* to agree to these concessions, provided his Czarish majesty would assist him with his land and naval force to re-establish King *Stanislaus* on the throne of *Poland*; as also to assist him to recover the dominions the *Danes* and *Hanoverians* were in possession of, belonging to that crown. The King of *Prussia* was likewise to be comprehended in this treaty, the Czar having undertaken to get *Stetin*, with its district, restored to the King of *Sweden*, for an equivalent to the King of *Prussia* elsewhere. The plan agreed on betwixt *Osterman* and *Gortz* was as follows:

#### I. The

BOOK I. The Czar faithfully promises and engages to cause put in execution the treaty of *Altranstادت*, so that the republick of *Poland* shall in time coming make no difficulty to receive and acknowledge for their rightful sovereign King *Stanislaus*; and to the end he may be received in that quality, the Czar shall order into *Poland*, the ensuing spring, an army of sixty thousand foot and dragoons; that the King of *Sweden*, in order to support this design, shall pass into *Germany* with a numerous army, to act in concert with the Czar; and in case any powers whatsoever shall interest themselves in the affairs of *Poland*, in opposition to this design, their Czarish and *Swedish* majesties oblige themselves not to lay down arms till King *Stanislaus* be effectually settled on the throne, and to maintain him thereon; as also to secure to the republic of *Poland* the freedom of electing their kings.


II. His Czarish majesty shall become mediator betwixt the kings of *Sweden* and *Prussia*, in order to establish a good understanding, by prevailing with his *Prussian* majesty to remove the difference concerning *Stetin*, &c. and the demolition of *Wismar*; and in case the King of *Prussia* shall insist upon an equivalent for the above-mentioned places, the two contracting powers shall act in

in concert for procuring him satisfaction else- BOOK  
where, without loss to *Sweden*; then in XIII.  
exchange, his *Prussian* majesty shall not on-  
ly be obliged to restore *Stetin* and all *Swe-*  
*dish Pomerania* to the King of *Sweden*, but  
to guarantee the treaty concluded betwixt  
him and the Czar; as also, to conclude with  
them a defensive alliance as projected on  
that subject; which alliance with *Prussia* is  
to be entered into two months after the  
ratification of the treaty betwixt *Russia* and  
*Sweden*.

III. The Czar finding it most just that the  
King of *Sweden* should have satisfaction by a  
convenient equivalent, for the large conces-  
sion he has granted to him, promises that  
if the said King shall find the equivalent  
commodious for him on the *Norway* quar-  
ter, he shall actually contribute thereto;  
and when the King of *Sweden* passes over  
into *Germany* with an army of forty thou-  
sand men, the Czar shall order twenty-five  
thousand of his army in *Poland* to join him,  
on his own proper charges, to act under  
his *Swedish* majesty's orders, the better to  
execute the projected plan; and if any other  
powers shall offer to oppose or intermeddle,  
the Czar engages to assist with his whole  
force: provided nevertheless the equivalent  
his *Swedish* majesty is to take from *Den-*  
*mark*, be not on this side of the *Baltick*  
sea.

BOOK sea. The operations by sea, shall be carried on in concert betwixt the contracting powers, the Czar promising to join his whole maritime force with that of *Sweden*.

IV. The Czar engages to assist with all his force, not only to oblige the *Hanoverians* to restore *Bremen* and *Verden* to the King of *Sweden*, but likeways to give him reparation of his damages: and if it happen that *Great Britain* shall interest itself, the two contracting parties promise jointly not to lay down their arms, until they have obtained the above-mentioned restitution and satisfaction on *Hanover*; but in case the King of *Sweden*, before the restitution, shall liberate the Czar from this last engagement, he promises and takes upon him, to dispose the Duke of *Mechlenburgh* to yield to the crown of *Sweden*, voluntarily in all time coming, the dutchy of *Mechlenburgh* and its dependancies, in exchange of any equivalent which the Czar engages to procure for the said Duke; but as the equivalent can be nowhere so conveniently procured as on the side of *Poland*, the King of *Sweden* is to oblige himself to concur in the execution thereof; in this case the hereditary settlements betwixt the houses of *Prussia* and *Mechlenburgh* shall have the same force with regard to the equivalent given to the said Duke

Duke. Moreover the contracting parties **BOOK** shall invite the other powers to enter into **XIII.** their treaty of alliance in order to entertain  a mutual friendship and confidence.

Matters being settled after this manner, immediately on the conclusion of peace, the Czar, with the kings of *Sweden* and *Prussia*, were to order as many ships as should be necessary to transport the King of *Sweden* with his army, and that these ships should be in the *Swedish* ports before winter, to be ready for the said design against the sea was open: about which time the Czar should be ready with his ships of force and gallies to join the *Swedish* fleet, in order to block up the *Danish* ships, that they might neither obstruct the transports, nor send troops over to *Jutland* or *Holstein*, and that the Czar should have his twenty-five thousand men in *Mechlenburgh* ready to join the King of *Sweden* on his landing.

The court of *Britain* having conceived some jealousy on account of the Chevalier de St. *George's* adherents at *Mittau*, sent persons to the courts of *Russia* and *Sweden*, The Brit-  
tish court  
jealous. with a view to penetrate into their most secret intrigues. Amongst others Mr. *Jeffries* arrived at St. *Petersburgh*, not so much to make any proposals, as to discover the designs of the court.

BOOK XIII. The Czar who had continued all this time about *Hango* and *Abo*, returned with the fleet to *St. Petersburg* the 14th of *September*, where to his great joy he found that the Empress *Katharine* on the 31st of *August*, had been delivered of a Princess, who was named *Natallia* after the Czar's sister; then he caused unrigg the fleet, which left no manner of doubt of peace being concluded betwixt *Russia* and *Sweden*: *Baron Gortz* being returned from his master to *Allandt*, to give the finishing stroke to the negotiations, repaired soon to *Sweden* to give the King an account of affairs.

The *Russian* troops had all this while continued in the heart of *Poland*, tho' they had often promised to leave the country, and had made several motions tending that way; yet they still remained exacting contributions. The dyet being assembled, desired Prince *Dolgoruky* to write and obtain an order from the Czar to Prince *Repnin* who commanded these troops, to remove, or they would be obliged to raise the *pospolite Rusziny* and force them out of the country.

The affairs in *Mechlenburgh* were in such disorder, occasioned by some misunderstanding betwixt the Duke and the nobility, that the Emperor of *Germany* sent a commission to examine into these complaints;

plaints; but the Duke not being of an humour **Book**  
 to submit, desired assistance from the Czar **XIII.**  
 who was uncle to the Dutchess, whereupon  
 he ordered troops into that country to sup-  
 port him.

During these transactions the King of  
*Sweden* undertook the fatal siege of *Frederickshall* in *Norway*, a place of great strength,  
 and reckoned the key of that kingdom.  
 The siege was so successfully advanced, that  
 they had already made themselves masters  
 of the fort called *Guldenlew*: but the King  
 being impatient, tho' he was told by the en-  
 geneer who had the direction of the siege,  
 that the town must surrender in a few days,  
 yet he must needs go to the extremity of  
 the approaches to observe what the enemy  
 was doing; where leaning over the parapet,  
 he received a shot in the head by a ball a-  
 bout half a pound weight, whereof he died  
 that instant.

The King  
 of Swe-  
 den's  
 death,  
 December  
 11th  
 1718.

Thus died *Charles XII.* of *Sweden*, a he-  
 roe all over, who saving the will of **GOD**,  
 deserved a longer life, and in all appearance  
 would have retrieved his affairs.

This Kings death caused a great change  
 in the affairs of the north: *Baron Gortz*  
 who had not got the accounts of it, was  
 arrested as he was going to his master at  
 the siege of *Frederickshall*. He was con-  
 demned, and his head struck off on a scaffold,

BOOK for no other reason that ever I could learn,  
 XIII. but for having served his master faithfully:  
 'tis true he put him upon ways and means  
 to tax his subjects, which were pushed so far,  
 that they seized the jewels and plate of private families, &c. but there was a necessity for it, or all must have gone to pot. This however so enraged the principal persons of the Kingdom, that nothing would satisfy them but the life of that able minister. A little before his execution, he made his own epitaph, in these words: MORS REGIS, FIDES IN REGEM, MORS MEA.

They also caused arrest several persons who had been concerned with the Baron, particularly his Secretary in the isle of *Al-landt*; by which the Czar came to know of the King of *Sweden*'s death, and that his sister the Princess *Ulrica* was proclaimed Queen: this put a stop to all negotiations for the time, and overturned all their \* projects. But the Czar considering the unhappy state of *Sweden*, a kingdom impoverished, without an army, and having scarcely bread, did not doubt but they would renew their negotiations, and continue them on the footing concerted betwixt *Osterman* and *Gartz*.

Counsellor

\* One of those projects was said to be in favour of the Chevalier de *St. George*, wherein the King of *Spain* was to have a share, and who undertook it alone unsuccessfully the next year.

Counsellor *Osterman* being at St. *Peters-Book*  
*burgh* in the beginning of *February*, the XIII.  
 Czar gave him new instructions; being in-  
 formed that the Queen of *Sweden* designed <sup>1719.</sup>  
 to continue the conferences, and had nam-  
 ed Baron *Lilliensted.* to succeed Baron *Gortz*  
 at the congress; who arriving at *Allandt* in  
 in the beginning of *June*, *Osterman* by the  
 Czar's orders repaired thither, with a view  
 to continue the negotiations, on the former  
 plan, if the *Swedes* inclined; but if other-  
 ways, to acquaint the *Swedish* plenipoten-  
 taries from him, 'that if they did not with-  
 ' in the space of two months, accept of these  
 ' conditions, he would enter their country  
 ' with fire and sword, and force them to  
 ' take worse.'

The King of *Sweden's* death made such  
 a change in affairs all over *Europe*, that those  
 to whom he had given so great umbrage,  
 began now to pity the deplorable state of  
*Sweden*, and agreed not to allow that king-  
 dom to be quite over-run and subdued by  
 the *Russians*. The famous quadruple al-  
 liance was concluded in the month of <sup>The qua-  
 druple al-  
 liance.</sup>  
*August*, where it was stipulate, that an ene-  
 my to one should be so to all. And *France*  
 having reconciled *Great Britain* and *Hano-*  
*ver* with *Sweden*, Colonel *Basswick* was  
 sent to *Stockholm* as minister from *Hanover*,  
 and Lord *Carteret* from *Great Britain*;  
 where

BOOK where they entered into an alliance with

XIII. *Sweden* against the Czar; by which *Bremen*

*and Verden* were for a million of crowns given off to *Hanover*; and *Great Britain*, besides paying yearly three hundred thousand crowns of subsidy to *Sweden*, was obliged during the war, to assist that crown with its naval force against *Russia*, to oblige the Czar to give up the provinces he had taken from *Sweden*; as also to get *Holstein* restored to the Duke. Much about this time, the King of *Prussia* entered into an alliance with *Sweden*, after the same manner, for which he got *Stetin*, &c. yielded to him; so that the Czar not only saw himself abandoned by his allies, but that they also joined his enemies against him; which obliged him of necessity to put his project of a descent in execution. Mean time, to make the *Swedes* accept of his proposals, and to satisfy the world of the motives of this expedition, he published a declaration containing his reasons.

The  
Czar's al-  
lies join a-  
gainst him.

The Queen of *Sweden* was no sooner informed thereof, than she caused publish a counter manifesto, containing her reasons for the war; amongst others, she accused the Czar of breach of faith, and that he absolutely refused to restore the *Swedish* provinces he had with his furious armies made himself master of; adding, that it would be

more


more for the honour and good of the coun- Bo o k  
try, to follow the steps of their glorious XIII.  
ancestors, than to submit to a yoke which ~  
would prove more insupportable than death.

The Czar carried on this expedition with  
vigour, having ordered his High-admiral  
*Apraxin*, with a great fleet of ships and  
gallies, together with a strong body of troops,  
to the coast of *Sweden*; where directing  
their course towards the islands of *Dallers*,  
they landed some troops, and took many  
prisoners; burning and destroying every  
where: then leaving *Stockholm* on the left,  
they pursued their march towards *Suder-  
telge*; where they not only destroyed all the  
copper-mines, burnt the furnaces and hou-  
ses, but also set the woods on fire. He  
left Commodore *Sinavin* cruizing about the  
*Dallers* with nine ships of force, who also  
landed troops; and after having plundered  
and destroyed the country all round, carried  
off their cattle. Admiral *Apraxin* arriving  
*July* 19th at *Landfort*, with his ships and  
gallies, took several *Dutch* ships loaded from  
*Koningsberg* with grain for *Stockholm*; and  
a party of *Cossacks*, after having advanced  
within three leagues of that town, attacked  
and routed the *Swedish* advanced troops,  
took prisoners a corporal and eight of the  
Queen's guards. This put such a conste-  
nation amongst all ranks of people in the  
capital,

His expe-  
dition a-  
gainst  
*Sweden*.

Conste-  
nation and  
ruin in that  
kingdom.

BOOK capital, that the hereditary Prince of *Hesse*  
 XIII. *Cassel* and General *Ducker*, were obliged  
 with some troops to march down the length  
 of *Waxholm*, where they came to under-  
 stand that the enemy had on board thirty  
 thousand land forces ready to invade the  
 kingdom: upon which, the Prince marched  
 with the *Swedish* army, consisting of about  
 fourteen thousand men to *Tuna*, distant  
 from *Stockholm* some more than four leagues.  
 The *Swedes* took all possible precautions to  
 withstand the *Russians*; but being obliged  
 to divide their troops, and send them in  
 parties here and there, they had not num-  
 bers for attacking the enemy; so that in  
 their sight all the country round was de-  
 stroyed: amongst other places, *Grisenhaven*,  
*Oster*, *Kamingen* and *Doirso*, a fine seat be-  
 longing to the Secretary of state. Another  
 party burnt *Bo*, together with Baron *Tessin's*  
 fine house, built after the *Italian* manner,  
 within three leagues of *Stocholm*; which ob-  
 liged the Prince to march against them from  
*Tuna*: whereupon the *Russians* retired load-  
 ed with booty, driving all the cattle before  
 them. After this, his Royal highness re-  
 turned to the capital to encourage the inha-  
 bitants, who were terrified to the last de-  
 gree to see the enemy so near the town:  
 the Prince went towards night to *Carels-*  
*berg*, (about a league distant from *Stock-*  
*holm*)

*holm*) where the court then was, to acquaint BOOK the Queen his spouse with the state of af- XIII. fairs. 

By this time they had accounts that Ad- Sir John miral *Norris* was arrived in the *Sound*, and Norris's lay with his Squadron a little distance from expediti- *Copenhagen*, which gave the *Swedes* hopes on. of some extraordinary assistance by that means.

Nevertheless the *Russians* continued their hostilities, and on the 28th took several ships loaded with provisions for *Stockholm*; the rest saved themselves under the cannon of the fort *Daliro*. On the 29th, they burnt the following places, viz. *Vagelbro*, *Malmoe*, *Sab*, *Sand*, *Wasby*, *Bratland*, &c. with churches, houses, and what they could set fire to, carrying off with them all that was portable. On the 30th, his Royal highness retreated with the army to *Jours-holm*, within a league and an half of the capital.

Towards the north, the *Russians* had burnt many towns and villages: they destroyed the whole island of *Sodiroun*, all the country about *Boertiles*; the towns of *Ost-kamer*, *Oregrund*, and the country of *Hokoywood*, where the best iron-mines in all *Sweden* were totally ruined, to the unspeakable loss of the kingdom; neither did they spare *Thoras*, an agreeable place, belonging

BOOK to Mr. *Rumph* the *Dutch* resident. It was  
 XIII. not in the power of *Sweden* to put a stop  
 ~~~~~ to these calamities, tho' Marshal *Ducker*  
 gave orders that all the *Russians* who were taken  
 on such occasions, should be immediately  
 thrown into the flames. In the beginning  
 of *August*, about two thousand *Russians*  
 having debarked at *Osterweek*, after having  
 routed a party of the enemy, they burnt  
 the town of *Suderlege*, with most of the  
 farms and villages in the neighbourhood.  
 But near to *Tossa*, a party of *Russians* ha-  
 ving debarked, fell in with a body of  
 A party of *Russians* *Swedes*, who cut them to pieces, and took  
 defeated. several prisoners. Towards the north, the  
*Russians* burnt and destroyed many mines,  
 especially near to *Nicoping*, a town of good  
 trade, which they also burnt; but the in-  
 habitants of *Norcoping* fell upon a stratagem  
 to save themselves, which was by removing  
 the best of their effects, and then setting the  
 town on fire; which the *Russians* beholding  
 in flames, believed it to be done by their  
 own people, so went not near it.

The places destroyed on this unhappy  
 expedition by Admiral *Apraxin*, were six  
 good towns, eleven palaces built of stone,  
 and an hundred and nine gentlemens seats  
 of timber, eight hundred and twenty-six  
 farms, three mills, and ten magazines, two  
 copper furnaces, and five of iron. Places  
 destroyed

destroyed by Major-general *Lacy*; two good towns, twenty-one gentlemens seats, five hundred and thirty-five farms, forty mills, sixteen magazines, and nine iron furnaces; one whereof was so valuable, that the proprietors offered three hundred thousand rix-dollars to save it, but in vain. The *Russians* carried off both copper, iron, and every thing else; and what they could not take on board their ships they threw into the sea.

The Czar concluded that after all this havock and destruction, the *Swedes* would come into his terms; and sent (after the congress of *Allandt* was quite broke up) Counsellor *Osterman* with fresh proposals; which upon the matter were the same as before, and were rejected by the *Swedes*.

The  
Czar's  
proposals  
rejected a-  
gain by the  
*Swedes*.


Admiral *Norris*, with the *British* squadron, after having continued some time in the bay of *Copenhagen*, failed to the *Swedish* ports. As soon as the Czar had accounts thereof, he wrote to the said Admiral to know the reasons of his entering into the *Baltick*, if he had orders to interrupt or oppose his operations and designs? The Admiral answered, that he had no such orders, but was come into these seas for the more security of trade. Nevertheless, he joined the *Swedish* fleet, commanded by Admiral *Sparr*, and sailed with it towards

BOOK *Stockholm*. But before they came up, the

XIII. Czar having ended all he had projected this

campaign, had already retired within his ports. 'Tis true, he retired somewhat sooner than he would have done, on account of a letter he had received from the Queen of *Sweden*, intreating that he would desist from further hostilities, in order to procure time to conclude without disturbance a solid peace. His Czarish majesty did not retire as was given out, from any concern he had about the *English* Squadron, being ignorant of any treaty entered into betwixt the courts of *Great Britain* and *Sweden* to his prejudice: for it had not been intimated to him by the *British* minister at *St. Petersburg*. This made him give no credit to any report that the *British* court had concluded a particular peace with *Sweden*; nor was he entirely convinced thereof till Mr. *Berkley*, an *English* gentleman, came to the isle of *Allandt* from Lord *Carteret*, Ambassador at the court of *Sweden*, with a letter to General *Bruce*, one of the Czar's plenipotentiaries at that place, with letters also to the Czar from the foresaid Ambassador, and Sir *John Norris*: General *Bruce* did not think fit to forward these letters, but returned them to the Ambassador with the following answer.

Mr,

' Mr. *Berkley* has delivered me the letter B O O K  
 ' your excellency did me the honour to XIII.  
 ' write me the 1st of *September* old style;   
 ' who also communicated to me at my de- General  
 ' sire, the contents of those he was char- Bruce's  
 ' ged with to his Czarish majesty. Your letter to  
 ' excellency will permit me to tell you, that Lord Car-  
 ' I find the contents thereof so singular, teret.  
 ' and so little agreeable to the strict ties and  
 ' alliances subsisting betwixt the courts of  
 ' *Russia* and *Great Britain*, that I cannot  
 ' take upon me to agree to what you desire,  
 ' without first having orders from the Czar  
 ' my master. Moreover, I am persuaded  
 ' that the court of *Great Britain* does not  
 ' want the ordinary means to communicate  
 ' its sentiments, either by letters to his ma-  
 ' jesty the Czar, or by their minister at  
 ' *St. Petersburg*; so that there is no ne-  
 ' cessity for making use of such extraordi-  
 ' nary and unusual expedients.'

This answer could not fail to satisfy the  
 Ambassador and Admiral *Norris*, that his  
 Czarish majesty was not to be forced in  
 to measures. Some time after, Messrs. *Jes-*  
*fries* and *Weber* received orders from their  
 court to depart from *St. Petersburg*, and  
 retire to *Dantzick*: this convinced the Czar  
 of the dispositions of that court; besides, he  
 was now fully assured that Admiral *Norris*  
 had orders to oppose, in conjunction with  
*Sweden,*

BOOK *Sweden*, the operations of the *Russian* fleet.

XIII. Whereupon, the Czar finding that the King of *Britain*, his ally, was now become his enemy, caused arrest all the *British* merchants within his dominions, and threatened to confiscate their effects, which amounted to several millions, if the *British* made war against him; and declared his intentions to that effect, by a memorial he caused his resident, Mr. *Wesselosky*, present to the court at *London*.

The Czar causes arrest the *British* merchants.

A memorial published at *London*.

The Czar puts them in mind of the alliance concluded betwixt that court, *Hanover* and *Russia*, in the year 1715; wherein, as elector of *Brunswick* and *Lunenburgh*, King *George* obliges himself not to make peace with *Sweden*, without comprehending *Russia*, far less in exclusion thereof; but that they should employ all possible means to procure by a general peace the cession of *Ingria*, *Carelia* and *Easthonia*, together with the town of *Revel* and its dependancies; and likeways, not to oppose directly nor indirectly, any other conditions his majesty the Czar thought fit to stipulate on the conclusion of a general peace with *Sweden*. On the part of *Russia*, that the Czar obliged himself to procure the cession of the dutchies of *Bremen* and *Verden* to the electorate of *Hanover*, which was made effectual, and could not have been obtained but

but by the means and strong solicitations BOOK  
the court of *Russia* made use of with the XIII.  
King of *Denmark*. That it cannot be denied that those solicitations and means, had  
inclined the King of *Denmark* to part with  
these valuable possessions, to the aggrandiz-  
ing of the house of *Hanover*. That there  
was nothing more natural than to expect  
the returns of such good offices, by a reli-  
gious observance of the same treaty: but  
that instead thereof, a separate peace was  
concluded, not only in exclusion of the  
Czar, but also to disengage from his alli-  
ance the kings of *Prussia* and *Poland*, (as  
elector of *Saxony*) who are comprehended  
in the separate treaty; by which they not  
only are obliged to furnish the *Swedes* a  
large subsidy in money, but also to assist  
them with their effects. *Wesselosky* sub-  
joined, that the former kings of *Great Bri-*  
*tain* had nothing more at heart than the re-  
ligious observance of treaties concluded be-  
twixt the crowns of *Russia* and *Great Bri-*  
*tain*, in consideration of the advantages  
both nations reaped from the trade their  
subjects enjoyed; with a great deal more to  
this purpose, too long to be inserted here.

King *George* as elector of *Hanover* re-  
plied, that seeing the Czar's memorial began  
with reproaching the steps the court of *Great*  
*Britain* had taken last year in favour of *Swe-*  
*den*,

King  
*George's*  
answer as  
elector of  
*Hanover.*

BOOK den, as being entirely opposite to the en-  
 XIII. gagements entered into by the said court,  
 ~~~~~ and that of *Russia Anno 1715*. it was go-  
 ing a little too fast to overlook four full  
 years, and not examine into the steps of the  
 court of *Russia* during that time: that the  
 world was left to judge, which of the courts  
 had first infringed the treaty of 1715; of  
 the project of taking possession of *Wisnar*,  
 and the design formed to make an establish-  
 ment in *Germany* under pretence of a de-  
 scent on *Schonen*, which never was intend-  
 ed; of the exactions of the *Russian* troops  
 in *Mechlenburgh*, and their refusal to eva-  
 cuate that dutchy; the designs to intimi-  
 date the *Swedes*, to force them into a sepa-  
 rate peace; the interview with Baron *Gortz*;  
 the congress of *Allandt*, formed without the  
 consent of the allies, their ministers not ad-  
 mitted thereat; and of the plan formed be-  
 twixt *Osterman* and *Gortz*. The world was  
 also left to judge, if all these steps were  
 consonant to the alliance and treaty en-  
 tered into *Anno 1715*. As to the fleets  
 sent to the *Baltick*, they were to protect  
 the trade of the nation, without giving the  
 least occasion of complaint or umbrage to  
 the Czar. But if the court of *Russia's*  
 conduct during these four years be examin-  
 ed, it will be found that as little regard has  
 been had to *Great Britain* as to *Hanover*;  
 intrigues

intrigues being carried on in favours of the **BOOK**  
 Chevalier de St. George, his emissaries ad- **XIII.**  
 mitted at St. *Petersburgh*; their memorials  
 received, their projects supported and encour-  
 aged, the most eminent persons among them  
 protected at *Mittau*; the expedition against  
*Norway* concerted with the King of *Sweden*,  
 after which a descent designed into *Scot-*  
*land*; an offensive alliance betwixt *Russia* and  
*Spain*; an entire harmony betwixt the mi-  
 nisters of the said courts at the *Hague*; the  
 regent of *France* dissuaded to sign the qua-  
 druple alliance: in fine, a kingdom laid  
 waste, and on the point of being subdued,  
 if *Great Britain* did not interpose. This is  
 a short enumeration of the benefits *Great*  
*Britain* and *Hanover* have received from  
*Russia*, &c. &c.

The court of *Britain's* answer to the  
 Czar's memorial was much about what has  
 been already said, and may be found in several  
 authors; particularly in the memoirs of *Pe-*  
*ter* the Great, said to be wrote by Baron  
*Ivan Westesforanoi* a *Russian*, (tho' I never  
 knew a Baron of that nation) so there is no  
 use of repeating it here; but to proceed to  
 real facts and operations both without and  
 within the empire of *Russia*, in the year  
 1719. those memorials and answers serving  
 rather to continue and augment the differ-  
 ences than to cure them.


His an-  
 swer as  
 King of  
*Britain*,

BOOK The Czar having as already said, settled  
 XIII. and established his councils after the manner of *France*; amongst others he appointed one for the mines, composed of persons of experience and knowledge at St. *Petersburgh*, where he caused build founderies, and furnaces for melting and seperating, with every thing else that concerns metals.

His majesty also considering that his subjects were come in use of travelling into foreign countries, on pretence of health, to use the waters of *Carlesbath*, *Swaisbath*, *Pyrmont* &c. which could not be done without considerable expence, and reflecting too that most of the late Czarowich *Alexis's* designs had been concerted on such occasions, he magnified the waters of *Alonitz* in his own country, the virtues whereof he had himself experienced, and, by the opinion of the physicians, they were found to be nothing inferior, but rather to exceed those in foreign countries.

Doctor *Areskin's*  
 death at  
*Alonitz.*

At this place are the best iron works in all *Russia*, and the iron exceeding good, where the Czar has some of the best gunsmiths in *Europe*, who make all kinds of arms for his troops, not inferior to what are made in *France* and *Holland*. Here died Doctor *Areskin* physician to the Czar. His majesty had so great a regard for him that he caused transport his corpse to St. *Petersburgh*,

*tersburgh*, where he was with great pomp **BOOK** interred. Amongst other obligations *Russia* XIII, owes this physician, it was he that put the  great imperial dispensary in the excellent order it is in at present; it furnishes the armies and fleets, and the whole empire with drugs, and makes a great addition to the Czar's revenues. The doctor was supposed in the latter years of his life, to have kept a correspondence with the Chevalier de St. George's agents: whatever be of that, he was an agreeable, open hearted, fine gentleman.

Vice-admiral *Paddon* an *English* gentleman, a person of singular experience in sea affairs, as also the old Marshal *Sheremetoff* The death of Paddon and Sheremetoff. dying this year, were both splendidly buried.

As the Czar was careful to honour his faithful servants after their death, he was likewise not forgetful of the living; Privy-counsellor *Tolstoy* had the honour of the order of St. *Andrew* conferred on him; Mr. *Romanzoff* was advanced to the charge of Major-general, and Mr. *Oschacow* to that of Brigadier; these three had been very instrumental in discovering the Czarowich's conspiracy and accomplices.

On the other side, his majesty being informed, that notwithstanding all his vigilance and care, many principal persons had again been guilty of great malversations, A new enquiry into malversations. found himself obliged to grant a new commission missions.

BOOK mission to examine into those matters. He

XIII. spoke to the commissioners, as follows: ' I

The  
Czar's  
speech to  
the court.

do not believe that any one of you is ignorant by the light of nature, and the acquired knowledge of the affairs of this world, that the two principal and first duties of those whom GOD has established to govern kingdoms, are to protect their subjects against their public enemies, in leading personally the armies to battle, in time of war, and to maintain peace and justice amongst the people impartially, by rewarding good actions and punishing the evil, without distinction of persons. You know what I have done with regard to the first of these duties, from the beginning of my reign; and with regard to the second, I have given you a most remarkable instance of the power that GOD has put into my hands, laying aside all wordly considerations, when justice is in the case, especially when the preservation of my people, and the good of the state require it. You have seen me punish the crimes of a son, who was perverse, ungrateful, hypocritical and wicked, above all that can be imagined; I have likewise punished the crimes of those who were the associates of his wickedness: I hope thereby I have secured my chief work, which is to render the *Russian* nation powerful and formidable, and  
' my

' my dominions flourishing; a work that BOOK  
 ' has cost me no small pains, and my sub- XIII.  
 ' jects much blood and treasure, which the ~  
 ' first year after my death would have been  
 ' entirely overturned and trampled under  
 ' foot, if I had not prevented it after the  
 ' manner I have done.

' This great work being over, it is time  
 ' I should turn my attention to suppress  
 ' the insolence of those who have abused  
 ' the power I had put into their hands, for  
 ' governing the provinces of my empire.  
 ' Many, in violation of their oath, have  
 ' oppressed (to the last degree) my poor  
 ' people, and have enriched themselves at  
 ' the expence of their blood and sweat.  
 ' And since these people have deserved so  
 ' much, by furnishing money, recruits,  
 ' horses and provisions, in supporting my  
 ' just cause, against an enemy with whom  
 ' I have been these eighteen years at war;  
 ' and have also supplied me in my other  
 ' pressing occasions: it is most just I should  
 ' interpose, and deliver them from these  
 ' blood-suckers. With this view, I am re-  
 ' solved to establish a tribunal, wherein my  
 ' General of the infantry, *Adam Weid*,  
 ' shall preside; the Lieutenant-generals *Bau-*  
 ' *terlin* and *Slepenback*, the major-generals  
 ' *Galitzen* and *Jayosinsky*, and the Briga-  
 ' diers *Wolkow* and *Ustascow* assistants.

' This

BOOK XIII. ' This tribunal shall examine with all rigour, the administration and conduct of the persons, a list of whom I shall put in their hands, and pronounce sentence against such as they shall find criminal. I hope the establishing of this tribunal will be a means to keep all of them, in time coming, within the bounds of their duty, and influence them to execute with justice the power they are intrusted with.'

The offenders  
punished,

This tribunal did examine matters with all the rigour and severity of the laws; and amongst the transgressors were found, to every body's astonishment, the Czar's favourite Prince *Menzekoff*, Prince *James Dolgoruky* president of the senate, the High-admiral *Apraxin*, with many others. Prince *Menzekoff* being first called, and confronted with his accusers, was found guilty of mal-administration of his majesty's treasure: he was ordered to deliver his sword, and dispose himself to undergo the sentence that should be pronounced against him. He submitted, and retired to his palace, to continue in arrest till further orders. After him was called the old Prince *Dolgoruky*, who appeared, and spoke with such eloquence in his justification, that the judges thought themselves obliged to ask his majesty's opinion before they should pronounce sentence

sentence against him. The High-admiral BOOK  
*Apraxin* being next called, and found guilty, XIII.  
 was condemned to be degraded from his office, with confiscation of his whole estate and effects, and commanded to arrest in his own house till further orders; whereupon he gave up his sword. Others were condemned to lose both life and fortune; and none escaped of the whole list, (which was very numerous) but by paying fines, to the value at least of what was alledged against them. The three first, Prince *Menzekoff*, *Dolgoruky* and *Apraxin*, the Czar considering their services, made each pay a considerable sum, and received them into favour, having given his promise to the first, that he should never cause take his life.

The Czar sent this year an Ambassador into *Persia*, in order to establish with the Schah a good correspondence, and a free commerce amongst their subjects on both sides; which was willingly gone into. But the troubles soon after arose in that monarchy, to such a height, that all commerce was stopped.

An Ambassador sent into Persia.

The council of the finances having represented to his majesty the scarcity of money, and that they were not able to answer all his demands, this was one cause of his establishing the already mentioned tribunal, which

BOOK which took to task the principal persons of  
 XIII. the empire. The Czar by this means, ex-  
 acted so great a sum of the delinquents, o-  
 ver the whole nation, that it amounted to  
 some millions of good silver, which he cau-  
 sed mix with an alloy of copper to the value  
 of a fifth; which brought into the treasury  
 twenty *per cent.* of all the current coin in the  
 empire. The merchants made remonstran-  
 ces, but to no effect; the necessities of the  
 state requiring that expedient. The mem-  
 bers whereof this tribunal was composed,  
 were most of them Prince *Menzekoff's* crea-  
 tures, particularly General *Weid*, who pre-  
 sided, had been raised by him from no-  
 thing; so that he knew very well whose  
 errand he was going.

Great  
 sums  
 brought  
 into the  
 treasury.

An obser-  
 vatory  
 built.

The Czar amongst his other useful works,  
 caused build on the island called *Wafel O-  
 strow*, on the river *Neva*, an observatory  
 like that of *Paris*; where he had his great  
 imperial library and chamber of curiosities.  
 He also for his diversion created a new King  
 of the *Samoides*, a barbarous unpolished  
 people, inhabiting the north-east parts, be-  
 yond *Archangel*, towards the frozen sea:  
 he was from *Portugal*, and of *Jewish* ex-  
 traction. The Czar met with him first at  
*Hamburgh*, where finding him a comical  
 fellow, and one who could be of use to him,  
 took

took him into his service in quality of jest-  
 er, and some time after created him Count: XIII.  
 (the sovereigns of *Russia* having never been  
 in use of creating nobility, Prince *Menze-*  
*koff* and others, who wanted to aggrandize  
 themselves by titles of honour, were obliged  
 to apply for them to the Emperor of *Ger-*  
*many*;) of this kind of buffoons the Czar  
 kept several about his court, who to mortify  
 still more the old *Russians*, (averse to all  
 politeness) would often teaze them and put  
 tricks upon them; and when they com-  
 plained to the Czar, he would answer, they  
 are fools, what's to be done with them?

Creates  
 his jester  
 a Count.

In the midst of these diversions, the Czar  
 got the mortifying accounts of the death of  
 his only son, the Czarowich *Peter*, heir  
 apparent to the crown; so that there was  
 none remaining of his male issue but  
 Prince *Peter*, son to the late Czarowich  
*Alexis*.

The Cza-  
 rowich  
*Peter* dies.

The Czar had caused build a convent for  
 the capuchins, and allowed others of the  
*Romish* clergy to live in his dominions, the  
 jesuits only excepted; who since the time  
 of the false *Demetrius* never got footing in  
*Russia*: the orders were by his majesty re-  
 newed, that if any were either openly, or  
 in disguise, within his dominions, they  
 should instantly depart. It was occasioned

The Ro-  
 mish cler-  
 gy, except  
 the jesuits,  
 encoura-  
 ged.

BOOK by a misunderstanding that had arisen between  
XIII. the court of *Vienna*, and that of *Russia*,  
on the subject of *Mechlenburgh*.

*End of the Thirteenth Book.*

THE

T H E  
H I S T O R Y  
O F  
P E T E R the G R E A T,  
E M P E R O R of R U S S I A.

---

B O O K XIV.

**T**HE Czar having observed the convenient situation, caused make a sea-port at *Rogerwick*, which is thought to be one of the safest next *Cronstat* on all that coast. At the same time, he carried on the work of the canal of *Ladoga*, as necessary, and as profitable a design as any he could undertake; by the means of which, there was a communication opened betwixt the ocean and the *Caspian* sea, but his majesty did not live to see this great work finished.

The Czar seeing himself abandoned by his allies, at the solicitation of the court of *Britain*, took his measures to carry on the war against *Sweden* alone, notwithstanding her

BOOK  
XIV.

A new  
harbour  
and the  
great ca-  
nal.  
1720.

The Czar  
carries on  
the war a-  
lone a-  
gainst  
*Sweden*.

BOOK her being supported by the *English* money  
XIV. and fleets, and favoured by the kings of

Denmark and *Prussia*, &c. He ordered an army of twenty-four thousand foot and dragoons to march through *Finland*, into the north of *Sweden*, and at the same time sent a strong fleet, to make itself master of the *Bothnick* gulf.

The dyet of *Poland* being assembled in the beginning of 1720, sent the palatine of *Masovia* Ambassador to the Czar, whose instructions were to ask reparation of the damages the nation had sustained by the marches and counter-marches of the *Russian* troops, the contributions they had raised, with several other exactions, such as carrying off their horses and cattle, &c. that tho' the republic had been injured to that degree, yet the dyet was inclined to send its complaints, expecting redress, rather than allow the nobility to mount their horses, in order to free themselves of the continual losses occasioned by the *Russians*.

Deals prudently  
with *Poland*.

The Czar at this juncture thought fit to manage the republic prudently, lest they should likeways make a separate peace with *Sweden*, and renew their pretensions on *Courland* and *Livonia*; and in that event declare war against him: so that he remitted this negotiation into the hands of Prince *Dolgoruky*, his Ambassador at that court.

He

He conferred with the deputies of the re-Book  
public appointed by the King and senate. XIV.  
This minister had orders to signify to them, ~~~~~  
that the Czar his master was exceedingly  
disposed to entertain a right union and good  
understanding with *Poland*; but that he  
was very desirous to know if the letters  
wrote to him in answer to his, were to be  
looked upon as the sentiments of the whole  
republic, since they were conceived in such  
terms as might be interpreted a declaration  
of war? Secondly, If the treaty concluded  
at *Vienna*, betwixt the Emperor and the  
King of *Poland*, was done with the consent  
of the republic? He likewise required that  
the town of *Dantzick* should be obliged to  
execute the treaty entered into with the  
Czar; by which they were engaged to arm  
and keep up a certain number of frigates to  
join his majesty's fleet.

The deputies answered to the first ques-  
tion, It was well known at the time when  
it was judged proper not to continue the  
dyet of *Grodno*, but to remit the deliberati-  
ons to that held at *Warsaw*, that it was re-  
solved the King, the Primate, and the Mar-  
shal, in name of the gentry, should write  
to the Czar, as they had done; that those  
letters contained nothing which looked like  
a declaration of war, but only a necessary  
remonstrance, that if the *Russian* troops con-  
tinued

BOOK continued any longer in the kingdom, notwithstanding the often reiterated promises to remove them, the republic, would of necessity be obliged, to fall upon suitable measures to prevent the entire ruin of the provinces; that they ought to protect the town of *Dantzick*, from which the Czar had exacted great contributions; and that they had not explained themselves otherways in regard to *Courland*, than by representing the antient right of the crown, which they were determined to maintain.

As to the second question, that the republic had no knowledge of the treaty concluded at *Vienna*; that if the King (as elector of *Saxony*) had entered into any particular treaty, he had the right to do it, without communicating the same to the republic.

And as to the Ambassador's demand concerning *Dantzick*, they answered, that the kings of *Poland* always left them the entire enjoyment of their rights and privileges; and seeing the republic keeps no naval force, they never required of their subjects in the maritime towns to arm any vessels; so that they could not give orders to the burghers of *Dantzick* to arm ships for the Czar, but if he had made any particular treaty with the town, that article should be more at large examined.

In

In fine, after several representations of mutual grievances, the deputies declared to the Ambassador, that the republic designed to take the opportunity of the Queen of Sweden's dispositions for peace, her majesty having made proper steps for that end; therefore the republic did invite the Czar at the same time to conclude a peace or to disengage them from their alliance, offering their mediation, with assurance that they desired nothing more than to live in peace and in good understanding with his majesty the Czar in any event.

The Palatine of *Masovia* made his public entry at St. *Petersburgh* the 5th of *March*, in great state. On the 7th he had a publick audience of the Czar, before whose throne he expressed himself as follows: The Polish Ambassador's entry and speech.

' Most serene, and most powerful, Great  
 ' Lord Czar, sovereign of all *Russia*: the  
 ' most serene, and most powerful Great  
 ' Lord King of *Poland*, Great Duke of *Lithuania*, and the republic, have sent me  
 ' to your Czarish majesty, in quality of their  
 ' Ambassador in chief and plenipotentiary,  
 ' in the sole view of representing and declaring to your majesty, the inviolable  
 ' friendship of the King, and republic, which  
 ' has never been infringed in any manner,  
 ' contrary to the alliance concluded; and  
 ' at the same time to congratulate your majesty

BOOK ' sty on the many victories obtained over  
 XIV. ' our common enemies, wherein the all  
 ~~~~~ ' powerful hand of GOD has so far sup-  
 ' ported your Czarish majesty, that all the  
 ' world will admire and read with astonish-  
 ' ment in ages to come, your immortal glo-  
 ' ry.

‘ How glorious is it for a monarch to car-  
 ‘ ry on so victorious a war, to put to sea at  
 ‘ the same time so powerful a fleet, at so great  
 ‘ charge, to erect whole towns, fortificati-  
 ‘ ons, sea-ports, and canals, such as your  
 ‘ majesty has done! This is an evident mark  
 ‘ that the blessing of GOD attends the acti-  
 ‘ ons of your majesty.

‘ However his royal majesty, and the re-  
 ‘ public hope, that your Czarish majesty,  
 ‘ having before your eyes their constant in-  
 ‘ tentions and care to maintain the common  
 ‘ ties, will in like manner fulfill the condi-  
 ‘ tions on your side; by which your Czarish  
 ‘ majesty will still more and more add to your  
 ‘ immortal glory, in doing justice to your  
 ‘ faithful allies.

‘ For my part, I esteem myself most hap-  
 ‘ py that GOD has allowed me to appear  
 ‘ before the throne of your majesty, with  
 ‘ my wonted veneration.’

This minister had immediately confe-  
 rences with the *Russian* ministry, who de-  
 clared in few words, that his majesty the  
 Czar

Czar would not give up his pretensions to *Book Courland*, far less to *Livonia*; and that the *XIV.* town of *Dantzick* should execute the conditions they had agreed to with his generals; in fine, that the council of the finances should examine whether his majesty the Czar was indebted to the republic, or the republic to the Czar.

The  
Czar's re-  
solutions.

While these matters were in agitation at *St. Petersburg*, peace was concluded at *Stockholm* with the King of *Prussia*, and the *Swedes* were on the point of concluding one with *Denmark*. The states of the kingdom being assembled, the Queen resigned the crown in favour of the Prince of *Hesse-Cassel*, her husband, who thereupon was proclaimed and crowned King. All these measures did not look like peace with the Czar. The court of *Great Britain* was in good understanding with the regent of *France*, who had engaged to pay to the King of *Sweden* yearly, the subsidy his most christian majesty was wont to pay to that crown; so that when the *Swedes* seemed to be reduced to the last extremity, they received from *France* six hundred thousand crowns. This with what they received from *Great Britain* and *Hanover*, made the *Swedes* take fresh courage, and give the Czar to understand, that he should not have peace on the terms he imagined. But all

Peace be-  
tween  
*Sweden*  
and *Prus-  
sia*.

The  
Queen of  
*Sweden*  
resigns  
the  
Crown.

BOOK this was of no great significance: *Sweden*

XIV. was drained both of men and provisions; so that unless their new allies could supply both these wants, they could not propose to continue the war against *Russia*. The Czar had his troops and fleets constantly ready, so that his expedition could be most part over before the *British* fleet could come to their assistance; which also happened on this occasion, where, after having ordered his land army and fleets to be in readiness, he ordered Mr. *Bestucheff* his resident at the court of *Great Britain* to present the remarkable memorial, \* which that court did not think fit to answer otherways then by ordering Mr. *Bestucheff* to depart the kingdom.

The *British* court orders the Czar's resident to leave the kingdom.

This memorial contained a relation of all that had passed from the beginning of the war, their alliances when and for what; and how they came at last to abandon the Czar; which was still the more glorious for him (said the memorial) in that he made peace with *Sweden* on his own terms.

After all these steps, it was not to be doubted but the ministers of *Great Britain*, considering what they had already done, would still push their point: and as soon as the season did permit, a squadron commanded

\* The *English* ministry found fault with some expressions in that memorial, particularly that they were in an interest opposite to their country's.

manded by Admiral *Norris*, appeared before *Copenhagen*; with orders to join the *Swedish* fleet. But that it might not be thought this squadron was sent into the *Baltick*, with any other design than to support the Court of *Britain's* mediation for reconciling the court of *Russia* with the new King of *Sweden*, as they had already reconciled *Denmark* and *Prussia* with that crown; therefore Admiral *Norris* before he sailed from *Copenhagen*, wrote the following letter to Prince *Dolgoruky* the *Russian* Ambassador at the court of *Denmark*.

S I R,

‘ The King my master has ordered me  
 ‘ into these seas with a squadron of his ships,  
 ‘ with a view to procure a just and reason-  
 ‘ able peace betwixt the crown of *Sweden*  
 ‘ and that of *Russia*. His majesty having  
 ‘ much at heart the good of his subjects, as  
 ‘ well as the interest of these nations who  
 ‘ are in friendship with him, wishes ardent-  
 ‘ ly that so christian, so profitable, and so  
 ‘ valuable a work may be brought to a good  
 ‘ issue. To that effect his majesty has  
 ‘ commanded me to notify to all his Czarish  
 ‘ majesty’s ministers, generals, and admi-  
 ‘ rals, the renewal of his offers of media-  
 ‘ tion for restoring peace betwixt the two  
 ‘ crowns. The King could wish that his

Sir John  
*Norris's*  
 letter to  
 Prince  
*Dolgoru-*  
*ky.*

BOOK ' majesty the Czar, would seriously examine  
 XIV. ' the state of affairs, and give ear to solid  
 ~~~~~ ' conditions for an accomodation. And that  
 ' his majesty's good dispositions may not  
 ' prove fruitless for want of sufficient powers,  
 ' he has granted to his minister at *Stockholm*,  
 ' as also to me, his Admiral, full power to  
 ' treat in concert, in quality of plenipoten-  
 ' tiaries and mediators, to endeavour the  
 ' concluding a reasonable and just peace be-  
 ' twixt the two crowns. This is, Sir, what  
 ' I intreat you would represent to his Cza-  
 ' rish majesty, with the assurance of my most  
 ' humble respects, and that I should esteem  
 ' myself extreamly honoured in receiving  
 ' his orders on this occasion.'

The  
 Prince's  
 answer.

Prince *Dolgoruky* answered as follows:  
 ' I received, Sir, the letter you sent me  
 ' this morning by your Secretary, by  
 ' which I understand that the King your  
 ' master has sent you into these seas, with  
 ' a squadron of his ships, in order to pro-  
 ' cure peace betwixt the Czar my master  
 ' and the crown of *Sweden*. All I can say,  
 ' is, that his Czarish majesty has nothing  
 ' more at heart than peace and tranquility,  
 ' and that he has given clear and visible  
 ' marks thereof to all the world, during the  
 ' whole course of this war. But since *Swe-*  
 ' *den* never had the like sentiments, the  
 ' continuance of the war can only be attri-  
 ' buted

‘buted to her backwardness. As to what Book  
 ‘you write me concerning the means and XIV,  
 ‘place of treating about this peace, I have  
 ‘no instructions from the Czar my master  
 ‘on that subject, so can give you no an-  
 ‘swer. If the court of *Great Britain* has  
 ‘any propofals to make to his Czarish ma-  
 ‘jesty, there are other means more proper  
 ‘to be made use of, so that I hope you will  
 ‘excuse me from such a commission.’

The Czar was determined not to accept of the mediation of *Great Britain*, and wanted rather to accommodate matters betwixt themselves. But in case *Sweden* in-  
 sisted upon having a mediator, his Czarish  
 majesty would admit of none other but the  
 Emperor of *Germany*, seeing both courts  
 had accepted of him in that quality some  
 time before, when the congress was to be  
 held at *Brunswick*, whither the Emperor  
 had sent a Secretary, and the regency of  
*Sweden* had appointed Count *Neiling* to  
 assist thereat. Besides, there being no open  
 rupture betwixt the courts of *Great Britain*  
 and *Russia*, he did not know the use of an  
*English* squadron intermeddling in his af-  
 fairs; tho’ at the same time it gave the Czar  
 no great pain, but rather made him more  
 forward in the execution of his projected  
 plan. His army in *Finland*, near *Abo*, con-  
 sisted of about twenty-four thousand men,  
 besides

The me-  
 diation of  
*Britain*  
 rejected.

BOOK besides other small bodies dispersed here and

XI there in that province, together with a strong  
 fleet of ships and gallies he had fitted out  
 at *St. Petersburg*, *Cronstat* and *Revel*,  
 which were in so good order, that the *Po-*  
*lish* plenipotentiary at his last audience, de-  
 livered his speech with wonder, to behold  
 the surprizing actions of this great Prince's  
 reign. As this Ambassador left the court,  
 there arrived at *St. Petersburg*, one of the  
 King of *Sweden*'s General-adjutants, who  
 was sent by his *Swedish* majesty to notify  
 his accession to the throne. He was soon  
 admitted to audience, where, after having  
 delivered the letters he was charged with,  
 he made a short speech to the following  
 effect: ' That the hereditary Prince of

The new  
 King of  
*Sweden*'s  
 message of  
 compli-  
 ment.

' *Hesse-Cassel*, with consent of the Queen  
 his spouse, and the states of the kingdom,  
 had ascended the throne of *Sweden*; that  
 his majesty had a particular esteem for the  
 Czar, with whom he ardently wished to  
 conclude a solid and durable peace, and  
 to entertain with his Czarish majesty true  
 friendship and good neighbourhood; to  
 which the King his master was willing to  
 contribute as far as lay in his power.'

The Czar made answer to these marks of  
 esteem and friendship: ' That with all his

The  
 Czar's an-  
 swer.

' heart he congratulated the King of *Swe-*  
*den* on his accession to the throne, and  
 gave

‘ gave his majesty thanks for communicat-  
 ‘ ing to him so much; that he was never  
 ‘ against concluding a lasting peace with  
 ‘ *Sweden*, having always had real dispositi-  
 ‘ ons thereto, provided the King of *Sweden*  
 ‘ would take the same firm resolution.’

His majesty detained that officer some time, purposely that he might be witness to his preparations; carried him about to see the army and fleets, the better to satisfy his constituents, that tho’ his allies had abandoned him, he was well able to manage his affairs; then dismissed the officer with the ordinary passports.

The Czar thought himself in honour obliged this campaign to undertake some enterprize by sea, were it for no other reason than to satisfy the world that he was not afraid of his new enemies; so having ordered his fleet for the *Bothnick* gulf, on the 7th of *August* the *Swedish* Admiral came up with the *Russian* fleet, which lay under *Lumland*, commanded by Prince *Galitzen*. The *Swedes* not thinking them so strong as they really were, made the attack: the fight continued for some hours, till at last the *Swedes* were forced to retreat, with the loss of four of their ships, and upwards of an hundred and forty pieces of cannon, and eight hundred men taken, killed and wounded. The *Swedes* published a quite different account

BOOK

XIV.

~~~~~

Prince Ga-

litzen

beats the

*Swedish*

fleet.

BOOK account of this battle than what the *Russians* did. The Czar on this victory, after XIV. he had made his triumphant entry, caused strike a medal, with his own effigies on the one side, and a sea fight on the other, with this motto, CONDUCT AND VALOUR SURMOUNT ALL DIFFICULTIES; and as he always encouraged brave actions, he presented Prince *Galitzen* with a sword set with diamonds, and the rest of the officers and soldiers in proportion. During the sea expedition, the land army was not idle: the said Prince *Galitzen* had ordered out two commands; one from *Vasa*, consisting of five thousand men, together with an hundred *Cossacks*: they crossed the *Bothnick* gulf, and debarked at *Uma* in *Lapland*; which they burnt, the *Swedes* retiring on their approach. After this, they burnt and destroyed several villages, gentlemens seats, wind and water-mills, and likewise the magazines; then returned to *Vasa* loaded with plunder. The other detachment, commanded by the Brigadier *Samordin*, made also a descent on *Sweden*, on the other side the *Bothnick* gulf, but found the country quite abandoned destroyed by former expeditions; so that he returned with four prisoners only.

Burning  
and plun-  
dering in  
*Lapland*,  
&c.

As these hostilities were going on, the Czar sent General-adjutant *Romanzoff* to the

the King of *Sweden*, in return of his civi-  
 ty, and to compliment his majesty on his  
 accession to the throne; to assure him of the  
 real esteem he had for his person; and that  
 he should be heartily glad to find in his  
 majesty dispositions for peace, as sincere as  
 his own were. Besides this commission, he  
 had orders to propose an exchange of pri-  
 soners, and a cessation of arms during the  
 winter, if the *Swedes* inclined it.

BOOK  
 XIV.  
 The Czar  
 sends a  
 commission  
 to the  
 King of  
*Sweden*.

Mr. *Romanzoff* was received at *Stockholm*,  
 as favourably as the *Swedish* envoy had been  
 at *St. Petersburg*; where, after having ac-  
 quitted himself of his commission, to which  
 the King returned an answer in a most po-  
 lite manner, Mr. *Romanzoff* met with all  
 manner of civility, and was at all the  
 parties of pleasure, and diversions of the  
 court. Falling one day in discourse with  
 Count *Horn*, president of the senate, he  
 proposed the exchange of prisoners, &c.  
 The Count told him, that the King could  
 not go into that, unless they agreed on a  
 cartel, both for the present and the future,  
 which he had no commission to treat of;  
 and as to the cessation of arms during win-  
 ter, there was no use for that, seeing in  
 that country all hostilities ceased on account  
 of the cold. *Romanzoff* replied, that oft-  
 times great bodies crossed over on the ice in  
 the winter time, as it is a daily practice;

Civily re-  
 ceived, but  
 without ef-  
 fect.

BOOK that *Charles X.* of *Sweden* crossed the *Sound*  
 XIV. a little above *Elfsinore*, with a great army  
 ~~~~~ on the ice, and besieged *Copenhagen*: the  
 Count said, tho' all that was true, he did  
 not see that a cessation of arms during the  
 winter could be of any use, unless they  
 could adjust before-hand the preliminaries  
 of a peace. Mr. *Romanzoff* told him, his  
 commission did not go that length; but  
 that he thought during that season they  
 might come to a better understanding, espe-  
 cially by a correspondence by letters; which  
 the Count absolutely refused. The *Swedes*  
 are the most jealous people in the world,  
 and understanding that the Duke of *Hol-*  
*stein* had entered into a correspondence with  
 the Czar, and had a considerable party in  
*Sweden*, who thought his right preferable  
 to the Prince of *Hesse-Cassel's*, all inter-  
 course by letters was refused.

Sir John  
*Norris*  
 prepares to  
 return.

The season being advanced, Admiral  
*Norris* thought of returning home with his  
 squadron; tho' it was given out that he  
 was to leave some few of his ships at *Stock-*  
*holm*, which did not happen. The Czar  
 believing the *Swedes* to be altogether averse  
 to peace, resolved to make great preparati-  
 ons against the next campaign, in order to  
 force them into it; and in case the *British*  
 fleet should return to these seas, he caused  
 build at *St. Petersburg* several large vessels,  
 from

from seventy to eighty guns, to oppose them if they had orders to act offensively. XIV.

The Duke of *Holstein* had a minister already at St. *Petersburgh*, who demanded the Czar's protection for his master: he being the eldest sister's son, thought his right preferable to Princess *Ulrica's*, who was the second daughter of *Charles XI.* but the *Swedes* having abolished the hereditary government, and made their crown elective, the Duke of *Holstein* was by this means excluded from all right. The Czar generously granted him his protection, and not only invited him into *Russia*, but sent him a present of one hundred thousand rix-dollars, taking pity of his case who once had views of succeeding *Charles XII.* in the crown of *Sweden*, which at present he was entirely out of hopes of, unless by the Czar's assistance he could bring it about. The King of *Denmark* was in possession of his dutchy of *Sleswick*; tho' the court of *Great Britain* and others, stood engaged to get it restored.

In the beginning of the year 1721, General-adjutant *Romanzoff*, in the frequent conferences he had with Count *Horn*, assured him of the Czar's hearty and sincere inclinations for peace; and that it was with the greatest regret imaginable, he was every year obliged to ruin and destroy the pro-

BOOK XIV. Considering the animosities that seemed to be betwixt the courts of *Great Britain* and *Russia*, the concessions the crown of *Sweden* had made to *Prussia* and *Hanover*, &c. it might have been expected that these powers would have assisted *Sweden* at this juncture in its distress. A body of twenty-five or thirty thousand veteran troops sent to assist the *Swedes* by the respective powers, would in all likelihood have obliged the Czar to accept of much worse conditions. But it seems, they were all willing that *Sweden* should be weakened: the Emperor had not forgot the bloody wars carried on by *Gustavus Adolphus* in the empire, and by the *Swedish* kings since. Had the late *Charles XII.* been as successful as he had reason to expect, against the Czar, who knows to what length he might have carried matters? so that it was much safer to allow *Sweden* to be dismembred, and confined within her old limits, rather than be exposed every new reign to be overrun with swarms of *Goths*. Only *Denmark* did not draw \* stake: the dutchy of *Sleswick* did not answer expectation, having been obliged more than once to restore it to the right owner. *Schonen* and *Blecking* was

Several powers not friendly to *Sweden*.

\* *Denmark* had got somewhat, viz. *Bremen* and *Verden*, which were sold to the elector of *Hanover*, tho' not at a high price.

was what the King of *Denmark* aimed at; Book  
which if he had got, *Sweden* had been re- XIV.  
duced to its primitive state: but whether ~~~~~  
the depressing of *Sweden*, and the aggrandizing of *Russia*, will prove an advantage to the rest of *Europe*, must be left to the public to judge. One thing is evident, *Russia* has many advantages that *Sweden* never had: in the first place, a vast and plentiful country, increasing daily, not only in its inhabitants, but in every thing else that can render a monarchy powerful; a numerous well disciplined army; powerful fleets; letters and regulations introduced to that degree, that nothing in *Europe* can go beyond it; and all by the indefatigable endeavours of the Emperor *Peter* the Great. And to supply the greatest want, that great Prince lately discovered in his country (near *Siberia*) mines of gold, silver, and copper, which have already been wrought at forty *per cent.* advantage.

During these transactions, the Czar had the accounts sent him by his minister at the *Porte*, that the Sultan had renewed, and prolonged the last treaty of peace, and had sent orders to the Cham of *Tartary*, to suppress the incursions of his subjects on the *Russian* dominions, otherways he could not protect them.

Mean

BOOK Mean time, the Czar believing the court  
 XIV. of *Great Britain* would use its endeavour  
 ~~~~~ to oppose the peace now going on, said he  
 would let that nation see he would distinguish  
 betwixt the people and the ministry, who he  
 imagined did not altogether act for the good of  
 the country. He published an edict, wherein he  
 allowed to the *British* nation full security and  
 liberty of commerce over his whole dominions,  
 notwithstanding the affront he had lately met  
 with in the person of his resident, which he  
 said sufficiently intitled him to make reprisals,  
 if he had a mind to it.

The Czar gives a favourable edict for *Britain*.

At last plenipotentiaries were appointed to meet at *Niestadt*. The King of *Sweden* named on his part Count *Lilliensted*, and General *Stromfeld*. The Czar sent General *Bruce*, and his Privy-counsellor *Osterman*.

The Duke of *Holstein* arrived at the Czar's court, where he was very graciously received: the Czar promised him to have his interest as much at heart as his own.

M. *de Campredon* minister from *France* at the *Swedish* court, having had several conferences with the *Russian* ministry at *St. Petersburg*, insisted still on a cessation of arms for a whole year, which for the reasons already given, was not agreed to. He was now told that his Czarish majesty's resolutions were

were absolutely taken; which were, that he BOOK was ready to restore to the crown of *Sweden* XIV. all the conquests he had made, reserving only *Ingria*, *Carelia*, *Livonia*, *Eaſtonia*, the town of *Wiburg*, together with *Helsingfors* and their diſtricts; that the Czar would not depart from theſe articles; that if *Sweden* had a mind to treat on theſe conditions, the conferences might begin, and he ſhould hear what the *Swedes* demanded on their part; that a ceſſation of arms could be of no uſe, ſince if the King of *Sweden* was in earneſt, peace would be ſoon concluded.

The plenipotentiaries of both ſides repaired forthwith to *Nieſtadt*, and entered upon conferences; but not ſo ſoon as to ſtop the *Ruſſian* troops from making a deſcent on *Sweden*. Major-general *Lacy*, who commanded in *Finland*, embarked with about fix thouſand *Ruſſians* and *Coffacks*; ſet ſail from *Allandt* the 27th of *May*, and came before a place called *Eſerum*, in the neighbourhood of *Gevel*, where he diſembarked his troops, and marched towards *Sunderham* and *Likwikſholm*, and afterwards as far as *Tima*; burning and deſtroying every thing without the loſs of one man, the country being quite diſpeopled. He marched almoſt through an hundred pariſhes before he got the length of *Uma*, above an hundred *Swediſh* leagues which are not ſmall ones. Their

Conferences at  
*Nieſtadt*.

*Sweden* ſuffers in  
the mean  
time.

BOOK greatest loss was the iron forges and mills,  
 XIV. with a magazine of ammunition and arms; all  
 which he destroyed, and had not desisted, if he had not got orders from the Czar on the agreeable accounts he had that the preliminaries were adjusted and a cessation of hostilities agreed to. This his Czarish majesty immediately caused publish; and it was intimation enough to the *British* squadron to retire, and to show them at the same time, that the King of *Sweden* had no more use for their service. Admiral *Norris*, who had entered these seas sooner than ordinary this year, sailed directly for *Copenhagen*; not well pleased, as was said, that he could not thwart the negotiations at *Niestadt*, and that the King of *Sweden* had so easily parted with *Carelia* and *Livonia*, which he did to save his nation from being intirely ruined. On the other hand, the Czar granted some concessions which were advantageous to the *Swedes*, in the melancholy situation of their affairs; this readiness to yield on both sides soon put an end to the conferences, and peace was concluded in all appearance to their mutual satisfaction: the principal articles are as follow.

Peace concluded be-  
 twixt *Russia* and  
*Sweden*.

I. Eternal peace and friendship.

II. All hostilities shall cease three weeks after the peace is signed.

III. *Sweden*

III. *Sweden* yields *Livonia*, *Eaſtonia*, *In-Book*  
*gria* with a part of *Carelia*, *Wiburg* with XIV.  
 the *Iſlands* of *Oeſel*, *Drago*, *Maen*, &c. ~~~~~  
 The Czar reſtores to *Sweden* *Finland*, with  
 all the reſt of the conqueſts; as alſo two  
 millions of rix-dollars, payable at two terms,  
 conform to a ſeperate article.

IV. All theſe countries ſhall be evacuated  
 and given up to *Sweden*, four weeks after  
 the ratifications are exchanged.

V. The *Swedes* ſhall be allowed yearly  
 to buy to the value of fifty thouſand rubles  
 of grain, at *Riga*, *Revel*, and *Wiburg*, with-  
 out paying duty, unleſs the harveſt proves  
 bad, or ſome other important reaſon.

VI. The Czar ſhall not meddle with the  
 affairs of *Sweden*, particularly in regard to  
 their form of government.

VII. The limits condeſcended on by the  
 treaty ſhall be regulated by commiſſaries,  
 after the exchange of the ratifications.

VIII. All theſe countries yielded by *Swe-*  
*den* to the Czar, ſhall enjoy their rights and  
 privileges, together with their religion as  
 before; and with regard to their eſtates and  
 effects, every one ſhall enjoy what he can  
 make appear to belong to him.

IX. The conſiſcations whether heritage  
 or other poſſeſſions, ſhall be reſtored; thoſe  
 who will ſwear fidelity to the Czar may do  
 it, which ſhall not hinder them from entering

BOOK into foreign service; but those who will

XIV. not, shall have three years allowed them to dispose of their effects, whether in lands or money.

X. All prisoners shall be liberated on both sides, on payment of their debts, but those who have a mind to stay shall have their choice.

XI. The King of *Poland* is comprehended in this treaty, and the *Swedes* shall enter into negotiations with him, by the Czar's mediation.

XII. The *Swedes* shall be favourably used with regard to commerce.

XIII. All ships which are in danger of being cast away, shall receive all possible succour, and when shipwrecked, the effects shall be saved as far as they possibly can.

XIV. The ministers who reside at each court, shall in time coming, have their charges defrayed by their own masters.

There were other articles relating to *Hannover*, *Holstein* and *Mechlenburgh*; but the *Swedish* plenipotentiaries having no orders to treat on the affair of the Duke of *Holstein*, these were all laid aside.

Great rejoicings.

Great rejoicings were at *St. Petersburg* and *Moscow* on this peace; as also at all the courts where his Czarish majesty had ministers. The rejoicings at *St. Petersburg* continued fifteen days, and began with the publication

publication of the peace in the great church; B o o k  
 where the imperial, the *French*, the *Prus-* XIV.  
*sian* and *Dutch* ministers were present. Af-  
 ter divine service, the treaty being audibly  
 read, the Bishop had a fine discourse; after  
 which the Great-chancellor, Count *Golofkin*,  
 harangued his majesty in the name of the  
 senate and the whole nation, giving him the  
 title of *Peter* the Great, Father of the  
 country, and Emperor of all *Russia*; which  
 was followed by a triple discharge of the  
 artillery, from the ramparts, and fleet, ac-  
 companied with the constant huzzas of the  
 people, who were regaled in all corners of  
 the streets, the fountains running with wine;  
 and at night there were illuminations and  
 fire-works. The *Swedish* plenipotentiaries  
 received presents from his Czarish majesty;  
 the first, ten thousand rubles; the second  
 eight; and the Secretary to the embassy  
 two.

The news of the peace was soon spread  
 over the whole empire, with orders to set  
 at liberty all the *Swedish* prisoners; but the  
 most part of them chose to continue in *Rus-*  
*sia*, where they had got settlements, and  
 found themselves much easier than ever  
 they had been before. The Czar made a  
 present to Admiral *Ehrenshild* of his picture  
 set with diamonds, and on his recommen-  
 dation,

BOOK XIV. dation, the King of Sweden advanced him to the rank of Admiral.

~~~~~ After the rejoicings were over, this great Prince, who never could be idle, made several new regulations, particularly, he confirmed the former order of bringing all goods for export to St. *Petersburgh*, which he designed to make another *Amsterdam* or *London*, and gave great encouragement to foreigners, as well as natives, to come and reside in that new town; tho' this year they met with great discouragement by the rising of the waters so high, (seven feet above whatever they had been known before) and getting into the vaults, that it occasioned the loss of several millions of rubles. But nothing could discourage his Czarish majesty, or make him give over any of his works; that of the great canal was still going on, in which twenty thousand men were daily employed.

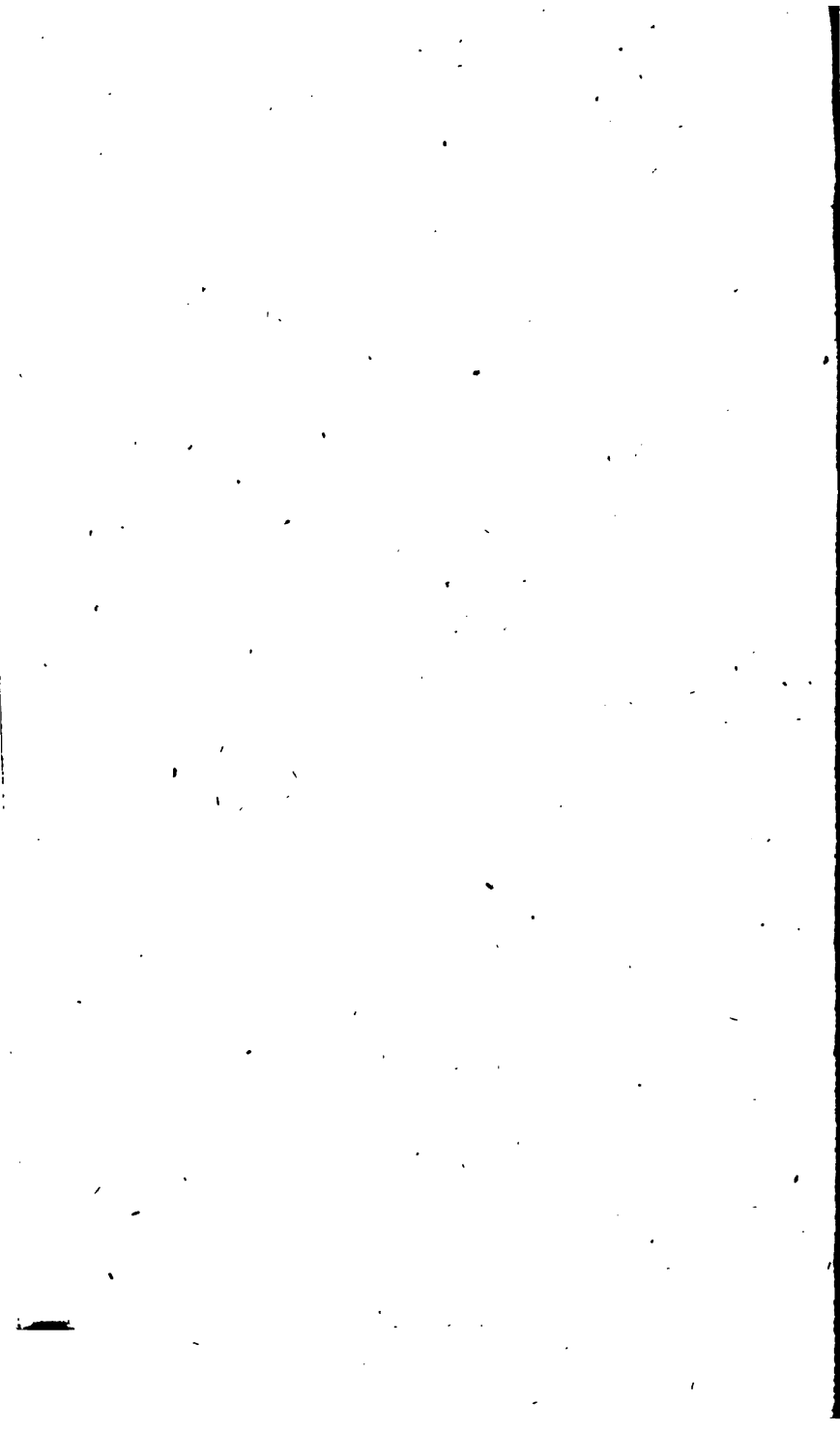
The Czar having caused notify to the sovereigns, with whom he was in friendship, the peace of *Niestadt*, these princes and states sent orders to their ministers to compliment him on that great event. The Vice-chancellor *Shafferoff* intimated to them, that his Czarish majesty had taken the title of Emperor; which his faithful subjects, the senate, and all the states of the empire had begged him to accept of. He told

The Czar takes the title of Emperor.

told them further, that his majesty's pre-BOOK  
tensions to that title were well founded; XIV.  
for proof of which, he exposed a printed ~~~~~  
copy of a letter wrote from the Emperor  
*Maximilian* to the Czar; as also originals  
from the republic of *Venice*, the kings of  
*Spain* and *Great Britain*, where the title of  
Emperor was given to the sovereigns of  
*Russia*. His majesty took this resolution  
about the end of *November*; so that hence-  
forward, in place of Czar, he was called  
EMPEROR OF ALL RUSSIA, and with  
great justice. It was in consequence of the  
senate and the nation's request, that his ma-  
jesty ordered his titles to be regulated, as  
in the beginning of the next book.

*End of the Fourteenth Book.*

THE



T H E  
H I S T O R Y  
O F  
P E T E R the G R E A T,  
E M P E R O R of R U S S I A.

---

B O O K XV.

**H**IS imperial majesty having regard to **Book**  
the request of his faithful subjects, **XV.**  
with respect to his titles, ordered that in  
time coming they should be expressed in  
foreign letters as follows:

We *Peter I.* by the grace of God, Em-  
peror and sovereign of all *Russia*, of *Mos-*  
*cow*, *Kiow*, *Wolodimer*, and *Great Novo-*  
*grod*, King of *Casan*, *Astracan*, *Siberia* and  
*Douria*, Lord of *Pleskow*, Great Duke of  
*Smolensko*; Duke of *Livonia*, *Eaſtonia*, *Ca-*  
*relia*, *Tweer*, *Permia*, *Winta*, *Bulgaria*, &c.  
Great Duke of *Niſinowogrod*, *Czernikow*,  
*Reſan*, *Roſtow*, *Jeroflaw*, *Bielozirow*, *Ud-*  
*ſoria*, *Obdoria*, *Condbria*, and ſovereign of  
all the ſeptentrional parts to the frontiers of  
VOL. II. D d China,

BOOK *China*, hereditary Lord and possessor of  
 XV. *Georgia, Cabardia, Chzorassia, and Gorsk,* &c. &c. &c.

The  
 Czar's  
 titles ac-  
 knowled-  
 ged by the  
 King of  
*Prussia,*  
 &c.

His imperial majesty, besides intimating them to the ministers residing at his court, caused his ambassadors and envoys at foreign courts, demand these titles of the respective sovereigns and states. The Grand Seignior, the King of *Prussia*, and the states of *Holand*, were amongst the first who acknowledged these titles; others waited till they should see what their neighbours did. The King of *Prussia's* minister declared to his imperial majesty his master's resolution by the following discourse.

‘ Most serene and most potent Emperor  
 ‘ and sovereign: his majesty the King of  
 ‘ *Prussia*, my most gracious master and  
 ‘ sovereign, no sooner heard from me, that  
 ‘ your majesty at the entreaty of your faith-  
 ‘ ful states and subjects, had resolved to  
 ‘ accept of the quality and title of Empe-  
 ‘ ror, than his majesty ordered me without  
 ‘ delay, to acknowledge your majesty in  
 ‘ quality of Emperor, and to compliment  
 ‘ you on that high dignity, so suitable to  
 ‘ your imperial majesty's redoubted force  
 ‘ both by sea and land, and the many king-  
 ‘ doms and states you possess in sovereignty:  
 ‘ and since several monarchs and states have  
 ‘ formerly as a natural consequence, con-  
 ‘ ferred

'ferred on the sovereigns of *Russia* the title B o o k  
 'of Emperor. What Prince indeed c n XV.  
 'with better right get that eminent title ~~~~~  
 'than your imperial majesty, who is en-  
 'dued with such great talents both for  
 'war and peace, that if by order of suc-  
 'cession your imperial majesty had not  
 'been placed on the throne, G o d on the  
 'account of your eminent qualities would  
 'have raised you to it?

'Your imperial majesty's known modesty  
 'does not in your presence allow me to  
 'enlarge on the heroic actions, nor to am-  
 'plify these eulogies which the whole uni-  
 'verse is full of: so I shall content myself,  
 'to wish, in name of my most gracious King  
 'and sovereign, that G o d would please to  
 'continue to your imperial majesty perfect  
 'health and prosperity to a good old age,  
 'with all other blessings; and that your  
 'majesty may persist in that sincere friend-  
 'ship towards the Royal family of *Prussia*  
 'as hitherto; and which the King my most  
 'gracious sovereign and master will not fail  
 'to cultivate, by all imaginable means.'

The King of *Denmark* was not so con-  
 descending: he was afraid that by granting  
 this high title, his imperial majesty would  
 be authorized, in his pretensions to a free  
 passage through the *Sound*. His minister at  
*Copenhagen* insisted on his master's reasons

BOOK for supporting that pretension, but his *Danish*

XV. majesty would by no means agree to it, considering that *Sweden* would not fail to protest against the article of peace lately concluded betwixt her and *Denmark*, where-  
 The King of *Denmark's* behaviour in that point.

by the *Swedes* obliged themselves to pay the said duty, which she had been exempted from before; and besides, other states, such as *Great Britain* and *Holland*, who were fully as powerful at sea as the Emperor of *Russia*, would in like manner pretend to the same privilege. It is well known also, that the King of *Denmark* draws a great part of his revenue from that impost. There was another thing in the case, the disappointment of the intended descent on *Schoonen* stuck so in his *Danish* majesty's stomach, it was no wonder he shewed some difficulty as to the *Czar's* titles.

After having made the necessary regulations, in the short interval of time since the ratification of the peace, his imperial majesty was resolved to cause his faithful subjects at *Moscow* partake of the rejoicings on that occasion, and where his presence was also necessary. He designed to enter that great city in triumph; and the inhabitants being advertised of his intentions, made suitable preparations. His majesty, accompanied by the whole court and foreign ministers, set out for his old capital on the 17th of *December*:

*cember*: he arrived himself on the 25th, and waited the arrival of the whole court to the 29th, that they might be present at this great solemnity. BOOK XV.

His imperial majesty entered the city through the first triumphal arch, at the head of his first regiment of guards, as Colonel; he passed forward toward the second arch, where he was harangued by the Archbishop of *Novogrod*, at the head of the clergy; after which, he marched on to the third, which had been erected by Prince *Menzenkoff*; then to the fourth, where he was harangued by Prince *Trubetskoy*, at the head of the magistracy: all this while the guns firing; with all other demonstrations of joy, and at night, illuminations and fire-works, such as had been before at *St. Petersburg*. The Czar's triumphant entry into Moscow, 1722.

To this triumphant entry, feasts, and all manner of diversions succeeded; which continued above a week, during which time his majesty and the ministry made several profitable regulations in regard to the civil government, the army, the coin, commerce and navigation. But above all, his favourite and principal scheme was that of the succession; for which purpose, in presence of all the clergy, the senate, and other states of the empire, he delivered himself in the following manner:

‘ WE

## BOOK

## XV.

The  
Czar's de-  
claration  
to the suc-  
cession.

WE Peter I. Emperor and sovereign of all *Russia*, &c. None are ignorant with what wickedness (like *Abfalom*) our son *Alexis* was possessed, and that his bad designs were not prevented by such a repentance as he ought to have had, but only by the mercy of GOD towards us and our dear country, as fully appears in the manifesto published on that occasion. Those designs proceeded from no other source than the antient custom of settling the succession on the eldest son; for which cause he never would give attention to our paternal reprehensions and exhortations. I do not comprehend how this bad custom could prevail, seeing not only it has been altered in particular families, according to the judgment of wise and prudent parents; but also, if we look into holy write, we shall see that *Rebecca* the wife of *Isaac*, when her husband was far advanced in years, procured the hereditary right to her youngest son. The same has been done by our predecessors; in particular, Czar *John Basilowich*, of glorious and happy memory, who was not only great by name, but also in action, since he reunited our country, after it had been divided amongst the sons of *Wolodimer*. What he did

' did execute was not in right of primoge-BOOK  
 ' niture, but by his own good pleasure; he XV.  
 ' changed his successor twice, in hopes to ~~~~~  
 ' find a worthy one, that the nation might  
 ' be kept entire, and never more be divided.  
 ' First, he pitched on his grandchild *De-*  
 ' *metrius* to succeed him, in exclusion of  
 ' his own sons; but afterward he deposed  
 ' the said Prince, tho' he had been crown-  
 ' ed, and conferred the succession upon  
 ' his son. It is easy to find many such  
 ' examples, which we shall forbear to men-  
 ' tion on this occasion; but which shall be  
 ' published separately hereafter.

' It was from this same view, and the  
 ' paternal care we have of our subjects, to  
 ' prevent the ruin of families by unworthy  
 ' successors, that in 1714 we caused publish  
 ' an ordinance, by virtue of which, the  
 ' immoveable estate might be conveyed to  
 ' the eldest son, tho' the parents were left  
 ' at full freedom to convey their estates to  
 ' any son they had a mind, appointing the  
 ' most capable, to preserve the succession  
 ' from being dissipated by wicked and pro-  
 ' digal heirs.

' How much more then are not we ob-  
 ' liged to take care of our empire, which  
 ' is this day (as every body knows) by the  
 ' blessing of GOD, much more extended?  
 ' Therefore, we have thought proper to  
 ' make

BOOK ' make a law, according to which, it shall  
 XV. ' always be in the power of the reigning  
 ~~~~~ ' sovereign to give the succession to whom  
 ' he pleaseth; as also to lay aside him  
 ' he has named, if found incapable: so that  
 ' the children both of Prince and people  
 ' should study virtue, and not become  
 ' wicked, after the sad example that has  
 ' been set before you.

‘ For which cause, we ordain that all  
 ‘ our faithful subjects, as well ecclesiastics  
 ‘ as laicks, confirm by oath our present or-  
 ‘ dinance, before GOD and on his Holy  
 ‘ Evangel; and that in such a manner, that  
 ‘ all who shall oppose, or put any other con-  
 ‘ struction on it than what is literally expres-  
 ‘ sed and intended, shall be reputed as trai-  
 ‘ tors, and doomed to death, with confisca-  
 ‘ tion of their estates and effects.’

At *Prebrasinsky*,  
*Feb. 5th 1722.*

P E T E R.

After which, his imperial majesty declared to the whole assembly, his intention was, that all and every one should swear on the Holy Evangel, and subscribe with their hands, that they should not only approve of the choice his majesty should make of a successor to the throne; but that they should

All swear  
 to the Em-  
 peror's no-  
 mination.

should acknowledge for their Emperor and Book  
 sovereign, any person his majesty thought XV.  
 fit to name for that effect. Every one took  
 the oath, and subscribed to the Emperor's  
 will, being persuaded that he would choose  
 none for his successor, but who was wor-  
 thy, and capable to support not only the  
 profitable establishments he had made, but  
 also to follow out his views and projects.  
 People were divided in their conjectures as  
 to his imperial majesty's choice: some be-  
 lieved he would prefer Mr. *Naritskin*, his  
 mother's nephew; others, Prince *Michael*  
*Galitzen*, a person of a good family, and an  
 excellent officer: Prince *Menzekoff*, the  
 Czar's favourite, had vanity enough to think  
 it was designed for him. But to none of  
 these had his imperial majesty intended the  
 succession, nor indeed was it to be known  
 till some time after. If his son the Czarow-  
 ich *Peter* had been alive, he had certainly  
 been the person; of whose education the  
 Emperor would have taken special care, to  
 have formed him, and made him fit to go-  
 vern after his own way. The Czarowich  
*Alexis* was quite ruined in his education;  
 his majesty having no regard for the mother,  
 even neglected the son, till he was past all  
 hopes of amendment.

The treaty of *Niestadt* had no sooner  
 put an end to a long and expensive, as well

BOOK as a dangerous war, than new laurels presented themselves to the Emperor.

*Selim IV.* King of *Persia*, had succeeded his father *Selim III.* Anno 1694. He was an effeminate Prince, brought up amongst the women, ignorant of the art. of government, and entrusted all to his prime Visier. He was often insulted by the *Tartars*, *Arabs* and *Moguls*, and had no other way to get rid of them but by force of money. The Emperor *Peter* made an alliance with this Prince, by which, he obtained leave for his caravans to pass through a part of *Persia* into *China*.

Somewhat  
of the af-  
fairs of  
*Persia*.

*Candabar* is a kingdom sometimes under the protection of the *Persians*, and at other times under that of the Great *Mogul*. *Mahomet Bakir*, a Prince of *Tartary*, subdued it; and in reward of the services he had done *Aureng Zeb* the Great *Mogul*, had some more lands added, by which he formed a pretty large dominion; but his son *Miriweys*, who succeeded him Anno 1712, being an ambitious Prince, and troubles arising in the *Mogul's* country, through the disputes among *Aureng Zeb's* sons about the succession, *Miriweys* intended to fish in troubled waters; but was in doubt whether to fall first into the *Mogul's* country, or into *Persia*: but finding the last fitter for his purpose, he made alliances

ances with the *Tartars* and *Arabs*, who undertook to fall into the Schah's provinces. During these troubles, poor *Selim*, not knowing whom to trust, conceived a jealousy against his prime Visier, and caused strike off his head; whereupon a kinsman of the Visier's, one of *Selim's* generals, marched with a considerable body of troops into the *Schirwan*, surprized and took *Samachia*, a rich town; where amongst others, some hundreds of *Russian* merchants, who chanced to be there on account of trade, were barbarously murdered, and all their effects to a considerable value seized. This happened in 1720. Another misfortune befell the *Russians* about the same time, their caravan was attacked in their return from *China*, by the *Usbeck Tartars*, in alliance with *Miriweys*, themselves massacred, and all their effects seized.

*Miriweys* pretended to have no hand in these disorders. He had not as yet taken off the mask, but persuaded the Schah, that he had entered his provinces with a view not only to bring his rebellious subjects to reason, but also to check the insolence of the *Tartars* and *Arabs*; publishing through *Zablastan* and *Sigestan*, as he marched, that his design was to establish the King's authority. He was an Omarite, as most of the *Tartars* are; and many of that

BOOK profession are dispersed over most of the  
 XV. provinces of *Persia*. These all joined *Miriweys*, without asking any questions, the  
 ~~~~~ *Persians* being followers of *Ali*, who are reputed hereticks by the *Turks*. *Miriweys* by this means having considerably augmented his army, marched towards *Kirman*, the capital of that province, where he gained the Governor, who surrendered on the first summons; then, after establishing his affairs, he marched straight to *Ispahan*, the capital of *Persia*, attacked the Schah, declaring himself Protector of the kingdom, and Generalissimo over all *Persia*.

The Schah had some time before sent an Ambassador to the Emperor, *Peter* the Great, (offering very advantagous conditions) for his assistance. This, together with the violences which had been used against the *Russians*, determined the Czar to comply with the Schah's proposals; but before he proceeded further, he sent an Ambassador to the Schah, assuring him of his assistance. This Ambassador having entered *Persia*, found the kingdom in such confusion, that he was forced to repair to *Miriweys's* camp; where having demanded an audience, which was immediately granted, the Ambassador laid before him the subject of his commission; that the Emperor his master's subjects had been barbarously

ously

ously murdered at *Samachia*; as also, that his troops, in conjunction with the *Usbeck-Tartars*, had not only massacred the *Russians*, but pillaged the merchandize and treasure of his caravan in their way from *China*; that these violences were contrary to the rights of nations, and therefore the Emperor his master demanded an adequate satisfaction.

*Miriweys* after having heard these complaints, answered, that he desired nothing more than to live in good understanding with the Czar his master, who he was informed was a Prince both prudent and warlike; but that he advised him, if he intended to send more caravans to *China*, to make an alliance with the *Tartars*, particularly with the great Cham, in order to procure a safe passage for them; or, if not, to send with them sufficient guards, such as he understood was the practice at sea, by sending ships of force to protect their merchantmen. That as to the *Usbeck-Tartars*, his allies, he could give them no orders.

As soon as his imperial majesty had the accounts of this insolent answer, he immediately issued out his orders to assemble a great army of *Tartars*, *Calmucks* and *Cossacks*, in conjunction with twenty-four thousand of his own best troops, designing to march himself at their head, in order to chastise

The Czar  
makes pre-  
parations  
against  
*Miriweys*.

BOOK XV.



BOOK chastise the insolence of this usurper: he  
 XV. also caused in all haste prepare vessels for  
 transport at *Astracan*. His army designed  
 for this expedition, consisted of seventy or  
 eighty thousand men.

His Czarish majesty before he left *Moscow*, established a council of regency, leaving Prince *Menzekoff* at the head of it. Amongst other alterations, he established regular posts betwixt *Moscow* and *Astracan*; also regulations for the maritime affairs, ordering all merchant ships to be dispatched preferably to all other business, and that no injustice should be done them, under penalty of the value of the ship and cargo.

At last, his imperial majesty and the Empress *Katharine* went from *Moscow* by the way of *Colomna*, in the intention to continue the voyage to *Astracan*, by the river *Wolga*. The High-admiral *Apraxin*, Lieutenant-general *Butterlin*, Prince *Trubetskoy*, the Hospodar of *Wallachia*, and the privy-counsellor *Tolstoy*, were ordered on before, to forward the preparations at *Astracan*.

Measures  
 taken for  
 safety at  
 home.

Whilst this great monarch was going to enter upon a new war, as distant as important, his troops and fleets were not idle. Admiral *Gordon* put to sea with the fleet; and the troops in *Courland*, *Livonia* and the *Ukraine*, moved from one quarter to another, not with design to undertake any thing,

thing, but to shew that he was prepared, **Book**  
 in case any of the neighbouring powers **XV.**  
 should form any projects in his absence at  
 so great a distance: the great names of  
*Mogul, Persian, Tartar and Miriweys*  
 magnifying daily, as always happeneth to  
 distant objects.

The *Turks* were no sooner informed of The Porte takes umbrage.  
 the great preparations making about *Astracan*, and the eastern provinces of the *Russian*  
*empire*, than they took umbrage. The  
 neighbouring *Bassas* on the frontiers of  
*Persia* acquainted the *Porte*, that the Em-  
 peror of *Russia* had formed the project of  
 subjecting *Gurgistan*, and annexing that pro-  
 vince to his dominions; by which some thou-  
 sands of *Mahomedans* must fall into slavery.  
 The prime *Visier* upon this, sent an *Aga* to  
 the *Czar*, desiring him to desist from that  
 enterprize. His majesty caused notify to  
 the *Sultan*, the insults he had met with from  
 the usurper *Miriweys*, who under the cloak  
 of religion, (the common cant on all such  
 occasions) had debauched the *Schah's* sub-  
 jects; and had succeeded so far as to force  
 the rightful sovereign from his capital; so  
 that his ambition and insolence ought to be  
 crushed in time. And that the *Turks* and  
*Persians* might not be ignorant of his real  
 intentions, his majesty caused publish the  
 following manifesto, which he distributed  
 over

Bo o k over all the kingdom of *Persia*, particularly  
 XV. along the *Caspian* sea, before he entered  
 upon the expedition.

The Czar  
 publishes a  
 manifesto.

‘ His majesty the Emperor of *Russia*, has  
 ‘ thought proper to make known to all the  
 ‘ inhabitants of the kingdom of *Persia*, the  
 ‘ Schah’s faithful subjects, and to all con-  
 ‘ cerned, that his imperial majesty is arrived  
 ‘ on the frontiers of that kingdom, with  
 ‘ his land and naval force, not in the in-  
 ‘ tention to reduce any of the provinces of  
 ‘ *Persia* to his obedience, but only to main-  
 ‘ tain the lawful possessor on the throne,  
 ‘ and to defend him powerfully, in con-  
 ‘ junction with his faithful subjects, against  
 ‘ the tyranny of the usurper *Miriweys*; as  
 ‘ also to obtain satisfaction of him and his  
 ‘ *Tartars*, for the disorders, massacres and  
 ‘ robberies, committed on the subjects of  
 ‘ the *Russian* empire; as well as other a-  
 ‘ buses. And that his imperial majesty’s  
 ‘ good intentions may be made manifest,  
 ‘ he graciously advertises the *Persian* sub-  
 ‘ jects under *Miriweys*’s command, to re-  
 ‘ turn and submit to their lawful sovereign,  
 ‘ and pay him the allegiance and obedience  
 ‘ they owe; warning all who henceforward  
 ‘ shall persist in their disobedience and re-  
 ‘ bellion, of whatsoever rank or quality  
 ‘ they may be, that they are to expect no  
 ‘ mercy. Moreover, we have have given  
 ‘ express

‘ exprefs orders to our troops, not to com-  
 ‘ mit any diforders, under the fevereft pe-  
 ‘ nalties, on any part of the dominions of  
 ‘ *Persia*, or againft any of the fubjects  
 ‘ and inhabitants of that kingdom.’

Here follows the account of this expedition, wrote by his imperial majesty’s orders, and fent by him to the fenate.

On the 29th of *July*, at feven o’clock at night, the whole fleet fet fail, confifting of two hundred and feventy-four veffels of all kinds: on the 30th, we arrived at the mouth of the *Wolga*; and the 31ft at *Schetire-Bogori*, where we received a letter from the Governor of *Terki*, which is a well fortified place, (formerly belonging to *Ruffia*) containing a garrifon of two thoufand men.

*Auguft* the 1ft the fleet failed, and af-  
 ter twenty-four hours caft anchor near to  
*Gniley-Lapugia*. The 3d, it continued fail-  
 ing, and arrived towards night at *Souet-kin*.  
 The 4th early it failed, and arrived in the  
 afternoon, and anchored before the mouth  
 of the river *Terki*, otherways called *Timon-ki*.  
 Thence Lieutenant *Lapuchin* was fent  
 to the Governor of *Terki*, with the Empe-  
 ror’s manifefto, wrote in *Arabick*, having  
 orders to leave fome copies with the Gover-  
 nor, and to fend the reft to *Derbent*, *Schi-  
 macca* and *Baku*, by thirty *Tartars* of *Ter-  
 Vol. II. F f ki,*

The ex-  
 pedition  
 into *Persia*.

BOOK *ki*, and the like number of *Circassians*, he  
 XV. had taken along with him for that end.

~ The 6th in the morning we received advice, that Brigadier *Veteran*, who had been sent over land with a body of dragoons towards *Andreoff*, had been attacked by the inhabitants, before he had committed the least hostility. He charged them with so much vigour, that he forced them into the town, which he took, giving the pillage to the soldiers, and then set it on fire. It consisted of above three thousand houses, but ill fortified. This was the only place in all *Dagistan* that made opposition to the *Russians*: their Prince called *Mahomet* fled. *Veteran*, after joining Major-general *Cropotow*, who had marched from *Astracan*, joined the army a few days after. The whole fleet entered within the bay, near to the port. *Simonoff* was sent to find out a proper place for disembarking, as near as he could to the mouth of the river *Agrachan*; where we arrived the 7th.

The 8th, at six in the morning, the signal for landing was given: it was so expeditiously done, that the whole infantry were landed before noon, notwithstanding the difficulty they met with, the soldiers being obliged to carry ashore the baggage, provisions and ammunition; the ships not being  
 able

able to get within fifty fathoms of it for want of water. BOOK XV.

The 11th, we raised a kind of fortification to cover the ships; which was perfected the 15th.

The 16th early, the whole army marched towards *Tarku*, leaving only in the entrenchments two hundred soldiers, and a thousand *Cossacks*, under the command of a Lieutenant-colonel; where we also left the sick.

The 17th, about three in the afternoon, the whole army arrived near to the river *Soulack*, which they crossed on bridges of boats. Here, two *Persian* princes came to salute the Czar, viz. the proprietor of *Gorsky*, and Sultan *Mahomet*: the first brought him six hundred waggons drawn by oxen for the baggage, and an hundred and fifty fat cattle for the use of the army, and three fine *Persian* horses with rich furniture for the Czar. The second sent an hundred oxen for the army, and six fine *Persian* horses for the Emperor. It was the 21st before they got crossed with the horses and baggage.

The 22d the army marched: the dragoons and *Cossacks* led the van; the rear waited for the coming up of provisions from the entrenchments.

BOOK XV. After the army had marched eight wersts from the *Soulack*, they came to a small rivulet, which they crossed on fascines; then marched over the mountains towards *Tarku*, and encamped that night within eight wersts of the town. In this march they found but little water.

The 23d, the army came within six wersts of *Tarku*, where the Governor came to wait on the Czar, and conducted the army within three wersts of the town. On this march, we observed the foundations of a great town, which reached from the hills to the sea.

The army continued here to the 26th, where the Czar received letters from the Governor of *Derbent*, and chief persons in the place, signifying with what satisfaction they had received his imperial majesty's manifesto, and their joy on his arrival; assuring him that they would look upon all such as traitors, who should make any opposition to his troops.

The 27th, the army arrived at the small river *Monas*, twenty-five wersts distant from *Tarku*.

The 28th, the army crossed the said river; as also that of *Boinac-Atzi*, over which was a stone-bridge. On this day's march they found the ruins of a great town: they encamped that night at *Old Boinac*.

The 29th, the army marched, and encamped that night near to the small river  
*Nitzi,*

Nitzi, in the dominions of Sultan *Mahomut Udenich*. BOOK XV.

The 30th, the Czar sent three *Cossacks* with orders to the Sultan, that he should send a deputation to confer, and receive his commands; but the guide on his return reported, that they had been very ill received, and that he did not know what was become of the three *Cossacks*. Towards three o'clock in the afternoon, the Sultan advanced at the head of a great body, and attacked the *Cossacks*, and then the dragoons, who were too hard for him; for after having above five hundred killed, and thirty-nine made prisoners, he left the field: the Czar caused pillage and burn the Sultan's place of residence, and six villages more belonging to him; in one whereof, the three *Cossacks* were found inhumanly massacred: upon which, the Emperor caused put the prisoners to torture. Some of them were persons of distinction: they declared that they did not know the cause of such cruelty, but that it had been done by the Sultan's orders; they also declared, that he had brought out ten thousand men to the field, and could raise as many more. *September 1st* twenty-one of the prisoners were executed, by way of reprisal for the three *Cossacks* they had massacred; another prisoner had his nose and ears cut off, and then was sent with

BOOK with a letter; wherein the Czar reproached  
XV. the Sultan with his tyranny and rebellion.

~ The *Russian* dragoons lost on this occasion about an hundred men, killed and wounded. The army encamped that night near the river of *Bug-Bagain*, over which they passed on two bridges, one of fascines, and the other of boats.

The 2d, the army advanced near to the river *Darbach*, where the Czar received a letter from the inhabitants of *Baku*; in which they testified their joy for his arrival in the *Schirvan*, wishing earnestly that his majesty would take their town and country under his protection; by which they might be delivered from the rebels, against whom they had defended themselves these two years bypast.

The 3d, the army marched, and encamped near *Derbent*. The Governor met the Czar with the keys of the town of silver, which he presented. The army marched through the town under a triple discharge of all the guns, then went and encamped near the sea. In this town, there were mounted on the ramparts, an hundred and seventy-eight iron guns, and sixty brass ones; with plenty of ammunition. The *Russians* were as joyfully received into this place, as if it had been one of their own towns. *Derbent* is one of the strongest and

and best situated in *Persia*, and the key of BOOK  
the kingdom. It was built by *Alexander XV.*  
the Great; and many monuments of his  
are as yet to be seen. The Czar continued  
here for some time, and regulated several  
affairs, tho' the best part of the army march-  
ed towards the river *Milonkenti*, fifteen wersts  
distant from *Derbent*, without hearing of  
the enemy. But the Czar fearing to fall  
short of provisions, the country being most-  
ly ruined by the *Tartars* and *Persians* ad-  
hering to *Miriweys*: the season being also  
pretty far spent, stopt his conquest for this  
year at the said river; and having left a suf-  
ficient body of troops in *Derbent*, he di-  
rected his march back to *Astracan*, where,  
having found, near the *Soulack*, a far more  
convenient place for embarkation than that  
in the bay of *Agrachan*, where he had caused  
raise the first entrenchment, he ordered the  
building of a fort, which he called *Holy*  
*Cross*.

The 25th of *September*, the Czar order-  
ed one thousand *Cossacks*, and four thousand  
*Calmucks*, in conjunction with the *Boi-*  
*nacs*, who were faithful to the Schah, to  
burn and destroy the countries belonging to  
*Mahomut* Sultan of *Udinich*, and the *Persian*  
*Ufmei*: none else had attacked and harassed  
the *Russians* on their march. These troops  
entered into the enemy's country, burnt and  
ruined

BOOK ruined every where; killed a great many  
 XV. people, and returned to the bay of *Agrachan*, with upwards of four hundred prisoners, and a great deal of booty; and all the horses and cattle they could drive. After which, the Czar embarked with the infantry for *Astracan*, whilst the cavalry marched by land.

*Miriweys* During this expedition, the usurper *Miriweys* had done all he was able to interrupt the progress of the *Russians*: he had engaged the neighbouring *Tartars* to harraßs them on their march, and had advanced himself with a considerable body of troops the length of *Ghilan*; but hearing of the overthrow the Sultan of *Udenich* met with, he did not think fit to march farther into the country, till his imperial majesty had retired. The Czar's generals, on *Miriweys's* approach, gathered all the *Cossacks*, *Cal-mucks* and *Tartars* together, marched with a good body of infantry from *Derbent*, and attacked the usurper's fatigued army, which they put to the rout. Some of the neighbouring Chams, after the Czar's departure, altered their conduct by favouring *Miriweys*; but the most considerable amongst them, had recourse to his majesty's protection, He returned with the whole court to *Moscow*; the people beheld with joy their victorious sovereign, who entered in triumph, causing

The Czar  
 returns in  
 triumph to  
*Moscow*.

causing carry before him the keys of *Derbent*. BOOK XV.

The power of this great Emperor who had subdued such a large extent of country, with so little difficulty, but above all the gaining of *Derbent* (the key into *Persia*) terrified *Miriweys*, who had many enemies in the heart of the kingdom, who had discovered his hypocrisy. The faithful *Persians* could not forgive his dethroning their sovereign, whose fate they were still ignorant of; some believing him dead, others, shut up in a castle, or prisoner amongst the *Turks*. In short the usurper became diffident of every body; even the *Tartars* disapproved of his ambitious views, and did not think themselves in safety, if he should become master of *Persia*; so that his only resource was to make application to the *Turks*. He sent an Ambassador to the Grand Seignior, remonstrating to his highness, that religion and glory were interested in opposing the progress of the *Russians*, who not content to have subdued both the provinces of *Dagistan* and *Schirvan*, they would not stop there, but infallibly, the ensuing year, would fall in upon *Georgia*, where there were christian princes who would receive them with open arms. In fine, that he was informed the Schah was under engagement to the Emperor of *Russia* to give off to him all the

*Miriweys*  
endeavours to  
stir up the  
*Turks*.


VOL. II.                      G g                      conquests

BOOK conquests he could make on the *Caspian*  
 XV. sea, provided he would assist him against the  
 faithful *Turks*, who had taken up arms in  
 defence of religion.

*Miriweys's* Ambassador accompanied his commission with considerable presents to the ministers at the *Porte*; besides of a long time the *Janisaries* and *Spahys* breathed nothing but war; the *Mufti* was a declared enemy of the *Russians*, as well as the *Cham* of *Tartary*; the prime *Visier* alone was for peace, yet was obliged to dissemble, and make all the preparations, as if war was to be declared, for fear of irritating those of the contrary opinion. But at the same time he sent an Ambassador to the Emperor of *Russia*, to be informed of his designs, and if he was resolved to push his conquests on the *Caspian* sea. The Emperor told him that the *Porte* had approved of his taking arms, to be revenged of the insults and damages his subjects had received from the usurping *Miriweys* and his allies; that he had undertaken nothing against his highness, but on the contrary, was absolutely disposed to observe faithfully the last treaty of peace.

The Sul-  
 tan satisf-  
 fied with  
 the Czar's  
 measures.

The Sultan was satisfied with his Czarish majesty's answer: but the Prince of *Dagistan*, having had recourse to the Grand Seignor's protection, took occasion to put him in mind of the obligation he was under to protect

protect all the *Mahomedans*. He published **BOOK**  
 a manifesto which he caused distribute a- **XV.**  
 mongst the foreign ministers at the *Porte*,   
 shewing that the Emperor of *Russia* had in <sup>The</sup>  
 the beginning of last year, with consent of *Dagestan* <sup>Prince of</sup>  
 the sublime *Porte*, entered *Persia* with de- <sup>publishes</sup>  
 sign to be revenged on the usurper *Miri-* <sup>a manife-</sup>  
*weys* for the abuses committed against the <sup>sto.</sup>  
 subjects of *Russia*, yet that the said Empe-  
 ror had at the same time made himself ma-  
 ster of *Derbent*, and other places in the  
 neighbourhood; whereby he had divested  
*Flagi Damit* of his principality, which had  
 formerly belonged to the *Ottoman* empire,  
 but had been taken by the *Persians* during  
 the wars with *Europe*; that the said dispos-  
 sessed *Flagi Damit*, being put under the ne-  
 cessity of having recourse to the powerful  
 protection of the sublime *Porte*, under the  
 conditions of paying homage, and holding the  
 said principality of the *Ottoman* Empire, his  
 highness, agreeable to the constitutions there-  
 of, had granted his protection as to a faithful  
*Mussulman*, so that if the Emperor of *Russia*  
 inclined to continue the peace with his high-  
 ness, he should immediately restore the said  
 principality to the dispossessed proprietor.

The prime Visier, who as is already said,  
 was the only person for continuing the  
 peace, proposed that they should sound the  
 Emperor of *Germany* to know what part he

BOOK would take on such an event. The Emperor declared that the ties were so strong betwixt him and the Emperor of *Russia*; that if he were attacked by the *Turks*, he would himself march to his assistance, so far did the Emperor of *Germany* favour *Peter* the Great on this occasion! But nothing was of greater weight with the *Turks*, than the good offices of the Marquis de *Bonac*, Ambassador from *France* at the *Porte*; who represented, That the Emperor of *Russia* had undertaken nothing against *Persia*, but by the participation and approbation of the sublime *Porte*, to be avenged of the injuries his subjects had sustained from *Miriweys*. Besides, that his great design was most of all to be regarded; which was to re-establish the Schah on the throne of his ancestors, all princes being concerned in point of interest, to make such a cause their own: that the Emperor of *Russia* had done nothing contrary to the peace subsisting betwixt the two empires. Further, if the *Porte* took umbrage at the Emperor of *Russia*'s conquests, he would make no more, reserving only to himself the liberty of assisting his injured neighbour against his unnatural and rebellious subjects: that the Cham, *Flagi Damit*, had been tributary to *Persia*, and, after having declared for *Miriweys*, the Emperor of *Russia* had,

on

on account of his unfaithfulness, dispossessed BOOK him of the principality; and that his having XV. recourse to the protection of the sublime *Porte* was of necessity, not choice.

The mentioning that the Emperor of *Russia* should push his conquests no further, The with the other reasons above-mentioned, Turks satisfied the *Turks*; their great concern being for satisfied a- that part of *Georgia* possessed by them. The gain, prime Visier acquainted the minister of *Russia*, that the Sultan was satisfied with what he had done, provided he stopt there, and made no further conquests in *Persia*.

But during these transactions, the inhabitants of *Ghilan*, a *Persian* province bordering with *Schirvan* and the *Caspian* sea, Again a- had implored the Emperor's protection, and larmed submitted to the *Russians*, on account of the and satis- cruelties committed by *Miriweys*, who had entirely ruined their country, and burnt and destroyed their provisions, that the *Russians* might not find whereupon to subsist, in marching through their country. This had almost undone all: the neighbouring *Bassas* were so alarmed, that they signified to the *Porte*, if speedy measures were not taken, the *Russians* would make themselves masters of all *Georgia*. But at the same time, an Ambassador arrived at *Constantinople* from the almost dethroned Schah, imploring assistance against the usurper *Miriweys*; and offering

BOOK offering the *Turks* advantageous conditions,  
 XV. which they readily gave ear to, and turned  
 ~~~~~ the preparations they had made against the  
*Russians* (the occasion being so favourable)  
 towards *Persia*, in hopes of recovering all  
 the *Turks* had formerly possessed on the o-  
 ther side the *Euphrates*.

New mal-  
 versations  
 in *Russia*.

Amidst these difficulties, in eviting a rup-  
 ture with the *Turks*, the Czar's penetrating  
 eye had discovered, that during his absence,  
 several abuses had been committed by many  
 of the principal persons intrusted by him;  
 and most of them were fined in large sums.  
 In former times, the Czars were kept in  
 ignorance of all that passed, both at home  
 and abroad; all matters being intrusted to  
 the prime minister, who commonly enriched  
 himself by bribes; which put a stop to all  
 pursuits, and occasioned the proverb, 'It's  
 'high to GOD, and far to the Czar.' But  
 this Prince, who was Czar, prime minister,  
 and every thing in his own person, looked  
 so narrowly into matters, that few or none  
 escaped. Amongst others, on this occasion,  
 the Vice-chancellor *Shafferoff*, (one of the  
 men in the whole empire, who had done  
 the Czar the most effectual service, and be-  
 sides was a great favourite) did not escape  
 being brought to a trial, and punished after  
 an exemplary manner. This eminent per-  
 son was accused on the five following  
 points;

points: *First*, That he had given to his BOOK brother a character and appointments un- XV. known to the Emperor and senate. *Secondly*, That he had signed some orders without having registered them, also unknown to the senate. *Thirdly*, That being Intendant-general of the post-office, he had of his own single authority raised the price of letters, and put the money in his own coffers. *Fourthly*, That he had concealed of Prince *Gagarin's* effects, to the value of two hundred thousand ducats in specie, and seventy thousand in jewels and plate, (this Prince's son had been married to the Vice-chancellor's daughter); and *Lastly*, That he had given injurious language to several of the senators in full senate, which was prohibited on pain of death. He was put to the torture, and on confession was condemned to lose his head: but being carried to the place of execution, and the executioner ready to give the blow, a herald by his majesty's appointment, called out, pardon for life by the command of his imperial majesty. The senate being then assembled, the Emperor, in consideration of the services this able minister had done him, caused alter the sentence from death to perpetual banishment in *Siberia*, with degradation of all honours, and confiscation of estate and effects.

The

BOOK The Emperor after having given his or-  
 XV. ders to march the necessary troops, with  
 ~~~~~ artillery, ammunition and provisions to *A-*  
 A new ex- *stracan*, for the ensuing campaign in *Persia*,  
 pedition took journey for *St. Petersburg* in the be-  
 designed into *Per-* ginning of *March* (1723) together with the  
*sia.* Empress and all the court; where they ar-  
 rived about the 11th.

*End of the Fifteenth Book.*

T H E

T H E  
H I S T O R Y  
O F  
*P E T E R* the *G R E A T*,  
E M P E R O R of *R U S S I A*.

---

B O O K XVI.

**T**HE Czar, on his arrival at St. *Peters-* B O O K  
*burgh*, caused with all expedition rigg XVI.  
 out a great fleet of ships and gallies, as was Conjec-  
 given out, to exercise the seamen; but it tures a-  
 was believed he had some greater design in bout the  
 view: he had not all the reason in the Czar's ar-  
 world to be content with the court of *Den-* mament,  
*mark*; which had not only made a separate 1723.  
 peace with *Sweden*, but entered into an al-  
 liance with other courts, which he thought  
 did not favour his interest. Besides, he had  
 two demands upon that court, *viz.* the resti-  
 tution of the countries taken from the Duke  
 of *Holstein*, and a free passage to the *Russian*  
 vessels through the *Sound*. For, he alledged  
 the dominion of these seas belonged to him,  
 as having the strongest naval force of all the  
 VOL. II.                      H h                      powers

BOOK powers bordering on the *Baltick*, nay, tho' XVI. they were all joined together.

~~~~~

Disposes  
of his use-  
less ships.

His imperial majesty, on the review he made of all his ships, having found a great many good vessels that were of no use to him, resolved to distribute them amongst the towns of *St. Petersburg*, *Riga*, *Revel*, *Pernaw* and *Wiburg*, for encouragement of commerce. He ordered twelve men to each vessel, eight maintained by himself, and the other four only by the towns; that if any of these ships were lost, or when rendered useless by time, the towns should make them up; that the number might always be continued.

The Duke  
of Hol-  
stein's  
views in  
*Sweden*.

The states of *Sweden* being then assembled to regulate the several important affairs relating to the kingdom, his imperial majesty advised the Duke of *Holstein* to send Mr. *Bassewitz* to manage his interest there, which the *Russian* minister had orders to support; for according to the late regulations, after the death of King *Charles XII.* that Duke had no pretensions to the succession; the absolute power with the hereditary right being abolished: yet he flattered himself, that the *Swedes*, who always had regard to the blood of their kings, might prefer him to all others in case the throne became vacant. The next expedient was, to have recourse to some round-about way,

to get himself acknowledged by the body Bo o k  
of the nation as next in blood to the crown: XVI.  
to effectuate which, he was to demand of ~~~~~  
the states assembled, the title of Royal High-  
ness. Mr. *Bassewitz* being charged with  
this negotiation, found great difficulty in  
the beginning. Those who had the chief  
hand in the alteration of the government,  
penetrated quickly into his design; so that  
the secret committee, to whom the memorial  
presented by Mr. *Bassewitz* on this sub-  
ject had been remitted, after long conside-  
ration, at last, in the end of *June*, made  
report to the upper-house, concluding in the  
negative; which was by some of them ap-  
proved of; and they proposed to remit the  
affair to the decision of the King and senate.  
But this by the generality was opposed, and  
the deliberation put off only to the next  
day, when the house received a message  
from the King and Queen, signifying their  
surprize at their hesitating to reject the me-  
morial presented by the minister of *Holstein*:  
upon which, the house thought fit to de-  
mand that the senate might concur, who  
the day following repaired to the said Gets the  
house; where after mature deliberation, title of  
they agreed to give the title of Emperor to Royal  
the monarch of *Russia*, and that of Royal Highness,  
Highness to the Duke of *Holstein*, seeing it and the  
could be of no prejudice to their majesties, Czar that  
of Empe-  
ror.

BOOK but seemed rather to contribute to the security of the kingdom; which resolution being communicated to their majesties by all the orders of the states, they even thought fit to consent thereto.

The Czar being informed of the success of this negotiation, particularly with regard to the Duke, for whom he designed the imperial Princess' his daughter, was highly pleased, and being now acknowledged Emperor by the kings of *Sweden* and *Prussia*, &c. He supposed the King of *Denmark* could no longer refuse him that title; so that he ordered his minister at *Copenhagen* to renew his instances on the three following articles.

*First*, That the King of *Denmark* should acknowledge him as Emperor. *Secondly*, That the *Russian* vessels should pass the *Sound* free of duty. *Thirdly*, That his *Danish* majesty, should re-establish the Duke of *Holstein* in the possession of his states, and restore to him the fortress of *Tuningen*, in the condition it was actually in, when the *Danes* got possession thereof.

His Imperial majesty, to support these demands, ordered the High-admiral to get with all expedition the fleet ready; so that the King of *Denmark* expecting to be attacked, especially on hearing the Emperor was to command in person, caused immediately

The demands on  
*Denmark*.

That King  
arms for  
his defence.

immediately get his fleet and land forces **BOOK** ready, in order to make the best defence he **XVI.** could. The Czar indeed intended no further thereby than to oblige the King to be at triple the charge yearly, above what the Duke of *Holstein's* dominions yielded him; and if this great Prince had lived some time longer, the King of *Denmark*, to prevent the ruin of his dominions, must have at last succumbed. But it pleased GOD to dispose of matters otherways.

The *Russian* Emperor ordered his fleet to sail for *Revel*, where he embarked, in presence of all the court and foreign ministers. The Czar embarks at *Revel*, This fleet consisted of twenty ships of the line, and fourty gallies. He did not continue above six days at sea, having done all he intended, but returned to *St. Petersburg* against the 8th of *August*, where he invited all the foreign ministers, and people of note, to witness a solemnity he intended at *Petershoff*, a house of pleasure his majesty had caused build some time ago.

This Prince having from his younger years taken more pleasure in conversing with foreigners than his own countrymen, and having been informed of the *Dutch* and *English* ships of war, wanted above all things to see one of them (tho' but in miniature) with guns rigging and every thing else; which he got done by some *English* carpenters to perfection,

BOOK perfection. The young Prince used often to  
 XVI. divert himself with his diminutive man of  
 ~~~~~ war on the lake of *Pereflaw*; by which he  
 got some notion of shipping, and shewed a  
 mighty passion for it, which still encreased,  
 till at last he got several ship-carpenters  
 from *England*, *Holland*, and *Venice*. Be-  
 fore his first expedition against *Affoph*, he  
 had several ships and gallies, built at *Ve-*  
*ronitz*, which not a little amazed the *Ruf-*  
*sians*, who never had seen shipping of any  
 kind, except some *English* and *Dutch* merc-  
 hant ships that frequented *Archangel*. His  
 first travels into foreign countries, were  
 in *Holland*: at *Swardam* he wrought with  
 his own hands, and became very expert.  
 What he had observed at *London* and *Spit-*  
*head*, and all he had done since as to ship-  
 ping, he said was owing to that small ves-  
 sel; which therefore he caused bring with  
 The so- great solemnity to St. *Petersburgh*; where  
 lemnity a-  
 bout the after much feasting, and rejoicing, he or-  
 little ship. dered it to be put into a casemate, giving it  
 the name of the little grandfather, that fu-  
 ture ages might know the rise of the migh-  
 ty fleets, of all kinds, that are this day to be  
 seen in *Russia*.

An Am-  
 bassador  
 from *Per-*  
*sia*.

About this time an Ambassador plenipoten-  
 tiary arrived at St. *Petersburgh* from the  
 King of *Persia*, who was received in great  
 state. After he had been admitted to his first  
 audience

audience, and delivered the Schah's letter, the Emperor asked him how the King did? The Ambassador in tears replied, he believed he was dead, his commission having been confirmed by the young Schah *Tahmas*. After which the great Chancellor Count *Golofkin*, told him that his imperial majesty's ministers should procure him a return to the letter he had presented, and that he should immediately be regaled at the Emperor's table. The Ambassador retired, and was conducted with the same ceremony as when he was admitted to audience. Then he was entertained at the Emperor's table, by Count *Apraxin*, who did the honours.

Some time after, as his imperial majesty was diverting himself at a ball, to which the Ambassador was invited, he received the agreeable accounts of the surrender of *Baku*, one of the most important places on the *Caspian* sea, for its situation, strength and commerce. Major-general *Matuskin* having sailed from *Astracan* with ninety vessels, and betwixt five and six thousand men; and arriving on the 28th of *July* before that town, sent a Major to the Governor with the following letter.

' Tho' the inhabitants of *Baku* after having promised to submit to his imperial majesty, had afterwards shewed their aversion to accept of his powerful protection, and

The Czar gets the news of the surrender of *Baku*.

BOOK ' the succours he had offered them ; never-  
 XVI. ' theless his majesty the Emperor, in confi-  
 ~~~~~ ' deration of the antient and constant friend-  
 ' ship subsisting betwixt him and the Schah  
 ' of *Persia*, and out of compassion to the  
 ' inhabitants of *Baku*, has been pleased to  
 ' send me not only with troops and ammu-  
 ' nition for their defence, but also with  
 ' provisions for their support ; so that they  
 ' ought not to reject this special favour, if  
 ' they have a mind to be regarded as faith-  
 ' ful subjects to their sovereign, and true  
 ' patriots ; but on the contrary, to repair  
 ' their fault by a speedy submission to his  
 ' imperial majesty.'

The Major-general caused, at the same time, deliver the Governor a letter he had received from the *Persian* Ambassador, as he passed through *Astracan* towards *St. Petersburg*, desiring him to submit to the protection of the Emperor of *Russia*. But the Governor returned answer by the Major, that he could not receive any *Russian* troops into the place, without an express order from the Schah. He also sent deputies from the town, who declared the same to the Major-general : whereupon he acquainted the Governor and the other inhabitants, that if they continued to refuse him admittance with his troops, he would be obliged to treat them as enemies and rebels to

to the Schah. He sent with the deputies an BOOK  
 interpreter to bring him their final answer, XVI.  
 who on his return, told they were not dis- ~  
 posed to receive either troops, or ammuni-  
 tion. Upon this, the Major-general order-  
 ed two galliots to move up nearer, in order  
 to bombard the place, whilst he with the  
 troops attacked them by land. They held  
 out till the 7th of *August*, when General  
*Matuskin* having every thing disposed for an  
 assault, summoned the Governor to surren-  
 der within the space of four hours. The  
 Governor demanded four days; which not  
 obtaining, he sent and acquainted the Ge-  
 neral, that he was willing to treat with  
 him. The 8th by five o'clock in the morn-  
 ing, he sent seven of the principal persons  
 of the town, desiring Major-general *Ma-*  
*tuskin* to march into the place with his  
 troops when he pleased. He made an apo-  
 logy for not receiving him sooner; which  
 he said was owing to some vile intentioned  
 people, for which he begged his majesty's  
 pardon. - The Major-general having pro-  
 mised pardon, marched into the town in the  
 afternoon, the people shewing all the marks  
 of joy imaginable.

The *Persian* Ambassador and plenipoten- A treaty  
concluded  
between  
the Czár  
and the  
Schah.  
 tiary concluded with the Emperor of *Rus-*  
*sia* an offensive and defensive alliance, where-  
 by he yielded for ever to his imperial maje-  
 Vol. II. I i sty,

BOOK sty, the towns of *Derbent* and *Baku*, with  
 XVI. all depending thereon; as also the provinces  
 of *Ghilan*, *Mazanderan* and *Asterabat*. On  
 the other side, the Emperor obliged him-  
 self to assist the Schah with a powerful ar-  
 my, and never to abandon him till he  
 brought the usurper and his rebellious sub-  
 jects to submit, and restore peace to *Persia*.  
 There was to be a free intercourse of trade  
 betwixt the *Russian* empire and the kingdom  
 of *Persia*.

This treaty was signed by Count *Gabriel Golofkin* Great-chancellor, *Andrew Osterman* privy-counsellor, and *Basil Stepanoff* Counsellor of the chancery, for the Emperor of *Russia*; and by *Ishmael Begh* Great-ambassador and plenipotentiary for the King of *Persia*.

After the signing the treaty, the *Persian* Ambassador wanted to take his audience of leave, and return to his master; but the Emperor invited him to stay some time longer, and partake of the diversions of the season. He carried the Ambassador to all the parties of pleasure; likeways to see the ships, the arsenals, magazines and country seats. He could not be prevailed with to stay longer than to the end of the month; and on the 25th he took his last audience in the same manner he made his public entry: he approached the imperial throne, and  
 kissed

kissed his majesty's hand. The Emperor Book  
 gave the letter for the Schah to the Great- XVI.  
 chancellor, who delivered it to the Ambaf-  
 sador, charging him from his imperial ma-  
 jesty, to assure the Schah his master of his  
 perfect friendship. and of his fixed resoluti-  
 on to observe the treaty concluded betwixt  
 them; whereupon the Ambassador, having  
 received more than ordinary presents, reti-  
 red perfectly satisfied. Before he retired,  
 he made a short discourse in praise of his  
 imperial majesty, exalting him far above  
*Darius* and *Alexander* the Great; with o-  
 ther compliments after the *Eastern* manner.

The *Porte* was soon informed of the con-  
 clusion and contents of this treaty; where- TheTurks  
 at they took umbrage, saying, it was indi- jealous of  
 rectly declaring war against them; that the this treaty,  
 Emperor of *Russia* could by this means make  
 great and easy conquests in *Persia*; which  
 the *Porte* would be obliged to prevent.  
 The Visier having told so much to Mr. *Nep-  
 liceff*, the Emperor's minister at *Constanti-  
 nople*, he, together with Mr. *de Bonac* the  
*French* Ambassador, without loss of time,  
 acquainted the Czar with the resolutions of  
 the Divan, who seemed to be on the point  
 of declaring war against *Russia*. These ac-  
 counts his majesty no sooner got, than he  
 sent a copy of the treaty betwixt him and  
 the young Schah to his minister at the *Porte*,

BOOK with orders to communicate the same to the  
 XVI. prime Visier, and to invite at the same time  
 ~~~~~ the Sultan to accede to the treaty, assuring  
 his sublime highness, that he was resolved  
 to observe religiously the last treaty with  
 the *Porte*, and had no other views than to  
 assist with all his power, a monarch insulted  
 and persecuted by his unnatural and rebellious  
 subjects, who had joined an odious usurper  
 against their rightful and undoubted sovereign.  
 To this, the peaceful Visier gave all attention,  
 and laid before the Sultan the Emperor of  
*Russia's* good intentions towards the Schah;  
 an instance whereof, was the inviting his  
 highness to share in the honour of getting  
 justice done that oppressed Prince. The  
 Marquis *de Bonac* contributed likewise not  
 a little, by giving the Visier the true  
 character of the usurper *Miriweys*; so that  
 the Sultan being rightly informed, by the  
 advice of the Divan, named plenipotentiaries  
 to treat on the affairs of *Persia* with his  
 imperial majesty; and at last, they came to  
 agree on the following articles.

Are pacified, and enter into an alliance against the usurper.

I. That the young Schah should send a solemn embassy to the *Porte*. not only desiring the Grand Seignior's assistance, but also that he would allow of, and agree to the treaty lately concluded betwixt the Emperor of *Russia* and the Schah; wherein, if  
 any

any article was found contrary to the honour and interest of the *Porte*, it should be declared null, or rectified. XVI.

II. That the *Porte* should allow the Emperor of *Russia* to possess all the countries along the coast of the *Caspian* sea, from mount *Caucasus* to the river *Offa*, viz. *Derbent*, *Baku*, *Ghilan*, *Ran*, *Mascan* and *Ierabat*.

III. That *Russia* should be satisfied with the southern coast, from *Ghilan* to *Offa*.

IV. That a sufficient district should be allowed to *Derbent*.

V. That the limits of the two empires should be fixed betwixt *Scamachia* and *Baku*.

VI. That the *Porte* should be allowed the provinces of *Erivan*, *Tauris* and *Casbin*, as far as the old confines of *Turky*, from *Wan* to *Argura*.

VII. As to what concerns the other countries which the *Turks* pretend to, all means shall be used to satisfy them, provided the *Russians* are favoured in regard to commerce.

This treaty, together with the former concluded betwixt the Emperor of *Russia* and the Schah, secured to the empire these valuable conquests on the *Caspian* sea.

During these conferences, the *Turkish* plenipotentiaries made an objection, that it could not be imagined the *Turks* should join with Christians to shed *Mahomedan* blood:

BOOK blood: the *Russian* plenipotentiaries replied, XVI. that besides the justice of the thing, it was the true means to prevent the shedding *Mahomedan* blood, by restoring peace to *Persia*; and that religion should not be in the question, which was commonly made use of to cloak all usurpations.


An objection answered.

About this time the *Hettman* of the *Ukraine Cossacks* dying, they sent some of their colonels demanding, besides redress of several grievances, that the Emperor would be pleased to appoint them a new *Hettman*. But insisting on their grievances, they alleged that their privileges in several articles had been infringed, and argued with too much heat; which made the Emperor (who would not receive the law from his vassals) order to put them under arrest. But having some time after, appointed Prince *Galitzen*, *Hettman* of the *Cossacks*, the Prince procured the enlargement of the colonels, to satisfy them that he was to enter on his office with mildness.

Prince Galitzen made *Hettman* of the *Ukraine Cossacks*.

His imperial majesty having by his prudent and wise management, established order and tranquility over the whole empire, designed to put in execution a project he had formed some time before; which was to cause the Empress *Katharine*, his spouse, be solemnly crowned, and issued out his orders to that effect, But at the time he designed

The Czar gives orders for the Empress's coronation.

designed this ceremony, his majesty fell ill at **BOOK**  
 St. *Petersburgh* of a trouble in his stomach; **XVI.**  
 which obliged him to keep his room for two   
 weeks, and consequently defer his journey to **Falls ill.**  
*Moscow*, till he should recover to his health.

Even during his illness, he never allowed himself to be one moment without doing something for the good of his country: he **Establishes**  
 established a new academy of sciences, com- **a new aca-**  
 posed of twelve members, a secretary, a **demey.**  
 library-keeper, and twelve students. The sciences to be cultivated in this academy, were to be divided in three classes; the first for mathematicks; the second for natural philosophy; the third for the *Belles Lettres*.

His Czarish majesty having recovered his health, caused acquaint all the foreign ministers to appear at court; where being assembled, he spoke to them as follows.

‘ You know gentlemen, that some time **Makes a**  
 ‘ ago, I designed -to have gone with the **speech to**  
 ‘ Empress *Katharine* my spouse to *Moscow*; **the foreign**  
 ‘ but GOD having ordered otherways, by **ministers.**  
 ‘ my indisposition, it has hitherto retarded  
 ‘ my journey; but being now by GOD’s  
 ‘ permission, in condition to undertake it,  
 ‘ I do not doubt but you have received or-  
 ‘ ders to accompany us to *Moscow*; and in  
 ‘ the mean time, if you have any commission  
 ‘ to execute, you may apply to my Great-  
 ‘ chancellor. Moreover, I desire you will  
 ‘ assure

BOOK ' assure your august masters of my sincere  
 XVI. ' friendship, and that it shall never fail on  
 ~~~~~ ' my side: orders are given for all things  
 ' necessary to make your journey easy, both  
 ' for yourselves and your domestics.'

Gets agreeable  
 news on  
 his journey,  
 1724.

A design  
 discovered  
 against his  
 life.

As his imperial majesty was on his journey, he received from his minister at *Stockholm* the agreeable accounts of a new treaty of alliance, confirming that of *Niestadt*, and clearing up several points concerning the limits and commerce; and ascertaining the titles and rights of the Duke of *Holstein*. This treaty was indeed signed the day his majesty arrived at *Olonitz*; where he went to drink the waters at *Petersbroon*, on his journey to *Moscow*. He arrived there the 1st of *April* 1724, and had the pleasure to receive the instrument of the treaty concluded betwixt him and the Sultan, relating to the affairs of *Persia*; which was presented him by a *Turkish* Aga, and the Marquis of *Bonac's* nephew, who had arrived two days before, and whither the Cham of the *Calmucks* had sent an Ambassador; in whose retinue were some *Tartars* belonging to *Miriweys* in disguise, and unknown to the Ambassador. These being discovered, were put to the torture, and confessed they had a design against the Czar's life, for which they were broke upon the wheel.

All

All things being prepared for the Em-Book  
press's coronation which was fixed for the XVI.  
18th of *May*, it was performed with as great  
magnificence and state, as if she had been  
daughter to the first monarch upon earth,  
in presence of all the foreign ministers, all  
the ecclesiastics, senators, and chief per-  
sons of the empire. And seeing there has  
been such honourable mention made of  
her, it will not be improper here to give some  
account of her life.

The Em-  
press's co-  
ronation.

The Empress *Katharine* was born and  
brought up in *Esthonia*, of mean parents. A short  
When she had attained the fifteenth year of her.  
her age, she entered into a *Lutheran* minister's  
service, whose name was *Gluck*, with whom  
she continued to the age of twenty-two,  
or thereabout, when she was married to  
a *Swedish* corporal; she was luckily taken  
and carried off by the *Russians*, amongst  
other prisoners, on the day of her marriage,  
at a country place near *Derpt*; her bride-  
groom being killed in the encounter, as  
was supposed, (for from that time he was  
never heard of) she was carried to Marshal  
*Sheremetoff*, in her wedding cloaths. The  
Marshal seeing her a fresh blooming young  
woman, that she might not fall into bad  
hands, sent her to Colonel *Balk's* lady, who  
was of *Livonian* extraction, with whom she  
continued until Prince *Menzekoff* happen-

BOOK ing to see her, would needs carry her to  
 XVI. the Princess his lady. The Czar, being  
 frequently with his favourite, soon saw her,  
 and took immediately such a liking to her,  
 that he ordered her to be sent to his sister,  
 the Princess *Natalia*, where his acquaintance  
 with her commenced. She was called  
*Katharina Vasilowna*: but as she became  
 of the Greek church, her name was changed  
 to *Alexowna*, the Czarowich *Alexis*  
 standing godfather to her at the font: the  
 Greek church admitting none into her com-  
 munion of the reformed religion, but who  
 must be baptized a new. She had several  
 children to the Czar before he married her,  
 particularly the Princess *Anna*, who was  
 married to the Duke of *Holstein*. The  
 Czar was married to her in the year 1710.  
 She was a very pretty well lookt woman of  
 good sense but not of that sublimity of wit,  
 or rather that quickness of imagination which  
 some people have believed. The great rea-  
 son why the Czar was so fond of her, was  
 her exceeding good temper; she never was  
 seen peevish or out of humour; obliging and  
 civil to all, and never forgetful of her for-  
 mer condition; withall, mighty grateful.  
 The *Lutheran* priest with whom she had li-  
 ved the most of her time, being with his  
 whole family carried into *Russia*, she took  
 care to bestow on them singular favours,  
 and

and to make their condition easier than ever B o o k  
 it had been before; but still with the Czar's XVI.  
 knowledge and approbation. The treaty ~  
 of *Pruth* put her out of the reach of envy  
 itself; she became the idol of the people,  
 particularly of the army. The Czar him-  
 self in the proclamation for her coronation,  
 after acknowledging her fidelity and tender  
 affection, owns also the aid he had received  
 from her council and advice upon many oc-  
 casions, besides that of *Pruth*. He never  
 alienated his affection from her, but so far  
 on the contrary, that a little before his death  
 he left her (in that event) as much sovereign  
 of the empire, as he had been himself, and  
 which she enjoyed undisturbed about two  
 years after his death. When the army  
 heard that the Emperor was dead, they ve-  
 ry much regreted him (and good reason  
 they had, for he always took special care  
 of them) but said, 'well, since our father  
 'is gone, blessed be GOD our mother is  
 'still alive.' She was of a good healthy X  
 constitution and died suddenly; which gave  
 most people occasion to believe she was car-  
 ried off by poison.

The Emperor after the great solemnity  
 of the coronation was over, and having or-  
 dered twenty four thousand of his best  
 troops, besides *Cossacks* and *Tartars*, which  
 might amount to sixty thousand more, to-

The Czar  
 makes  
 great pre-  
 parations  
 to assist the  
 Schah,

BOOK XVI. together with artillery ammunition and provisions, and shipping for transporting them from *Astracan*, under the command of Prince *Galitzen*, in order to assist powerfully the Schah; left *Muscovy* with the whole court, and returned to *St. Petersburg*, where he made several promotions both in his armies and fleets. The rest of the year he employed himself after his ordinary manner, in promoting trade and navigation, and every thing else that could contribute to the advantage of his country.

The revenues of the clergy abridged.

He had some time before regulated the benefices of the clergy, from the patriarch down to the parish priest: also the convents, what their numbers should be, allowing what was sufficient to all, but no superfluity; so that full two thirds of the church revenues went into his treasury, and all persons seemingly satisfied.

He also established this year a regular packet-boat betwixt *St. Petersburg* and *Lubeck*, for the benefit of commerce and travellers.

Scarce were the pompous rejoicings over for the coronation of the Empress, and betrothing of the young Princess to the Duke of *Holstein*, when the Czar was seized with the distemper of which he died. He spent the *Christmas* holidays very chearfully, and had no complaint till the day of the

the THREE KINGS; when assisting at the BOOK ceremony of BLESSING the WATER, the XVI. weather being excessive violent, he caught a severe cold, which with a violent strangury and retention of urine, occasioned by an imposthume in the bladder, put an end to his life on the 28th of *January* 1725. The physicians made use of a probe, but too late: it gave indeed some ease for a while, by bringing much of the matter away, but his pain soon became again excessive, and he suffered torture equal to the rack four days more; yet in all his distress he shewed great signs of the hero, with a good deal of the Christian: and it argued a very great concern for his people, that when at the worst, he gave orders for shortening law processes. Some days before his death, finding his end approaching, he called the senate, the counsellors, and the other states of the nation together, where he declared the Empress *Katharine* his successor in the empire.

The Czar catches a severe cold, which was the occasion of his death.

Names his successor.

Thus died *Peter I.* Emperor of *Russia*, who certainly deserved the epithet GREAT, as much as any Prince ever did. When we consider the method he took to reform his empire, his drawing the natives by degrees into a taste of military affairs, beginning himself at the lowest degree, to shew example to others; his travelling into foreign countries

His character.

BOOK countries to observe the customs and manners of the inhabitants; his raising, disciplining and supporting such great armies and fleets; his introducing learning, manufactories and handicrafts of all kinds; with the great length he brought commerce and navigation, things before altogether unknown to that people; the prudent measures he took to weaken and reduce his enemies: in short, the reforming his country in every particular, as well the ecclesiastic state as the civil, is so extraordinary, that I do not believe since the creation of the world, ever monarch was at so great pains or did the like; and all within the space of thirty years. The great fatigue he underwent, together with his other excesses, shortened his days, having only lived to the age of about fifty three years. He was severe rather than cruel, never pardoned a malefactor, except those of his own blood, Prince *Basil Galitzen*, as is already said, and some few of his greatest favourites. He looked upon some things as crimes, which in other countries are not punished with that severity they deserve; such as concussion and taking of bribes, which he could not endure. The taking great men sometimes to task, tho' not capitally, for such misdemeanours, particularly his favourite Prince *Menzekoff*, was done (as some said) with a view


to excuse the more rigorous punishment of Bo o k  
 inferior criminals; according to the *German* XVI.  
 proverb, 'The small thieves are hanged, ~~~~~  
 'but the great ones are allowed to escape.'  
 His leaving the empire to that once mean  
 woman, the Empress *Katharine*, was a sur-  
 prize not only to *Russia*, but the whole  
 world: yet considering the great affection  
 and esteem he always had for her, his con-  
 fidence in her prudence and justice, and the  
 many eminent services she had done him,  
 it was the most prudent step he could take,  
 and nothing less than what he ought to have  
 done; for if he had left the empire to his  
 grandson Prince *Peter*, who succeeded her,  
 she and her children had been sent to *Si-*  
*beria*, or some worse place, where she would  
 have ended her days in misery: the leaving  
 her in possession of the whole, was the only  
 means to make her safe\*.

### Amongst

\* I believe further, that Czar *Peter* thought *Katharine*  
 would support his regulations (which she knew too better  
 than any body) more than a stranger. A stranger also of his  
 own subjects he had none of sufficient authority to quash ca-  
 bals, factions and emulations; whereas she, was of authority,  
 by the applications in business the Czar had allowed to be  
 made to her in his own time. Perhaps too, a stranger might  
 have taken it in his head to have removed the crown totally  
 from the Czar's race, and established it in his own; but she  
 had no race, but what was the Czar's also: so that in  
 effect, this establishment was but a mere interim, and being  
 fortified with title and dignity, served for the better conser-  
 vation of things, without doing injury to any, more than  
 a simple regency could have done.

BOOK Amongst other instances of *Peter the*  
 XVI. Great's talents, the method he took to inspire his subjects with a military genius, without using force, was curious. Knowing the aversion the nation generally had to war, to shew them good example, he entered himself into the meanest stations of it; beat the drum, carried arms, became corporal, serjeant, and so on; and just so in the navy: which the young nobility no sooner perceived, than they came in great numbers, desiring to be admitted into the service, and according to their behaviour were advanced. Prince *Galitzen*, Prince *Dolgoruky*, with many more of the first families, carried a musket, and passed through all the degrees, till they advanced to considerable commands. Before this time, it was thought dishonourable to bear any command under that of Colonel; and these were only of the second rank of gentry: the prime quality would accept of no command under that of a General: ' For (said they), why should we serve and expose ourselves?

As for a stranger without his dominions, he had no choice but the Duke of *Holslein*, who abstracted from *Katharine* was of no weight; and could not have answered to govern, but might be of use if thrown into the scale with her, which the making her sovereign did, by the attraction of him, thro' the alliance of her daughter whom he had married: so that all things considered, this was perhaps the wisest thing the Czar ever did.

‘ ourselves? We can find strangers for our **BOOK**  
 ‘ money, who are good enough for such **XVI.**  
 ‘ mean employments.’ 

But what contributed ‘most, next to the Emperor’s own example, was, that a Prince, or one of the greatest quality of the nation, was to have no rank but by his post: a Captain raised from obscurity had the precedence of a Prince that was inferior to him in command, not only upon duty, but on all other occasions; which introduced emulation to that degree, that every one was at pains to outdo another.


The method this wise Prince took to raise and keep up a standing army became easy, both to himself and to the country: it was after the following manner. First, he considered the extent of his dominions, and how the different countries were peopled; he caused take an exact account of all the families within each province, both in town and country; and after having considered their numbers, he obliged each province, according to its strength, to furnish two or three regiments, but for the most part two, one of foot, and one of dragoons, which they were to keep up in all time coming; and not only to furnish men but horses; so that the officers are at no trouble about recruiting. No sooner do the troops retire into their winter quarters, than the colonels

The method the Czar took to keep up his army.

BOOK send to the provinces an account of what  
 XVI. recruits the regiments will want, which are  
 ~~~~~ duly sent them against the spring. The  
 Emperor has large estates over this vast empire, belonging in property to himself, which are not exempted from these contributions and payments; and at the same time, the people are the least oppressed, it being a part of the Governor's duty to raise and be answerable for the subsidies, who must take care to distribute justice equally.

The children of the boors (the boys at the age of sixteen, and the girls at twelve, or at most thirteen) are commonly forced to marry, in order to increase the revenue, and then they get tenements and lands of their own, for which they pay nothing the first two years, but thereafter are obliged to do as others. Their houses both in town and country are built of timber, whereof there is plenty every where. Their villages and towns near the frontiers have a kind of a fortification sufficient to keep off a body of *Tartars*, who are always on horseback.

This great Emperor came in a few years to know to a farthing the amount to all his revenues; as also how they were laid out. He was at little or no expence about his person, and by living rather like a private gentleman than a Prince; he saved wholly that great expence which other monarchs are  
 at,

at, in supporting the grandeur of their BOOK courts. It was uneasy for him to appear XVI. in majesty, which he seldom or never did  but when absolutely necessary, on such occasions as giving audience to ambassadors, or the like ; so that he had all the pleasure of a great Emperor, and at the same time that of a private gentleman.

He was a lover of company, and a man of much humour and \*pleasantry, exceeding facetious and of vast natural parts. He had no letters, he could only read and write, but had a great regard for learning, and was at much pains to introduce it into the country. He rose early: the morning he gave to business, till ten or eleven o'clock at farthest; all the rest of the day, and a great part of the night to diversion and pleasure. He took his bottle heartily, so must all the company; for when he was merry himself, he loved to see every body so; tho' at the same time he could not endure habitual drinkers, for such he thought unfit for business.

When he payed a visit to a friend, he would pass almost the whole night, not caring to part with good company till past two

L 1 2

o'clock

\* Indeed the marriage of the *Dwarfs* and others of that kind were too low for Czar *Peter*: it has perhaps been to comply with the taste of others; but it must in some measure have fallen in with his own.

BOOK o'clock in the morning. He never kept  
 XVI. guards about his person, nor was accompa-  
 nied by above five or six persons at most.

He was a Prince rather parsimonious than liberal, but knew very well how to time his favours, and to bestow them with a good grace. He never could abide ceremony, but loved to be spoke to frankly and without reserve. He never refused any person's invitation, he had an esteem for, only they must desire him to name his own time, lest he might have been pre-engaged.

When King *Augustus* and the Czar met, they did business in the morning; and in the afternoon minded their diversions, the King delighting much in company of the ladies, and his bottle; which he could bear very well: the Czar went often into his frolicks, as much out of complaisance and good nature as inclination. He was generally fortunate in his undertakings, and in discovering the several plots and conspiracies which had been from time to time formed against his life. To sum up all, his fellow never sat upon that throne; and I question very much, if ever another of so great abilities will succeed him: 'tis true the most difficult part is over, so it will be no hard matter to continue things on the footing he has put them. 'Tis not to be feared that ever the *Russians* will return to their old  
 ways;

ways; the aged people are all dead, and the young so fond of the new, that it would be more difficult to bring them back to their old methods than it was for Czar Peter to take them from them. Book XVI.

The old people among the *Russians* used to compare this great Prince to Czar *John Basilowich*, commonly called the Tyrant. *John* (said they), turned off his first Empress, and shut her up in a convent, without a just cause: so did *Peter*. *John* killed his eldest son: so did *Peter*; and with premeditate design, which *John* did not. *John* put infinite numbers even of his greatest subjects to most cruel deaths: so did *Peter*. *John* brought a great many strangers into the country, and designed to introduce foreign fashions: so did *Peter*. *John* married seven wives: *Peter* had as many wives and mistresses. *John* encroached upon the church, and annexed most of its revenues to the crown: so did *Peter*; who went yet further, for he abolished the patriarch's office, and set up a mock patriarch, a married person called *Mickta Missowich Zotow*, to the great contempt of religion and scandal to the nation.

But let me tell these gentlemen, that if Czar *John* had had as good reason for what he did as Czar *Peter* had, they may cut off the word Tyrant from his character: for the

BOOK the commission of one, or a few rash and  
 XVI. even cruel acts, are not sufficient to deno-  
 ~~~~~minate a Prince a tyrant. But by all that  
 one can judge, *Peter* the Great was a hu-  
 mane Prince, whose general motive was the  
 honour and good of his country; so that  
 excepting his turning off the Empress *Eu-*  
*doxia*, whose character was never blemish-  
 ed; and the neglect of his eldest son's edu-  
 cation, which was a consequence of the  
 former step, all *Peter's* conduct may be  
 justified with no great difficulty. Indeed  
 the number and severity of the executions,  
 (whereof that of the metropolitan, in the  
 Czarowich's process, seems the least justifi-  
 able) is much to be imputed to the barba-  
 rous constitution of government in that  
 country. As to the justice of attacking the  
 young King of *Sweden*, that point I leave  
 to the casuists to determine; tho' the *Rus-*  
*sians* reckon that the provinces taken from  
*Sweden* belonged to *Russia* before\*.

The

\* The reader may look at the different accounts given by the *Russians* and *Swedes* of the reasons for that war, in the *Present State of Russia*, Lond. 1722. The Czar honestly tells he kept *Livonia* (which the *Poles* laid claim to) for his own pains, King *Augustus* having left him all the work to do.

The following EPITAPH on *Peter the Book*  
Great was written soon after his death: XVI.

*Hic jacent*

*Reliquiæ, vix mortales,*

PETRI ALEXOWITZ

*Russiarum Imperatoris haud opus est dicere,  
Honorem enim isti diademati addidit non  
recepit.*

*Taceat antiquitas,*

*Cedat ALEXANDER,*

*Cedat CÆSAR;*

*Se facilem præbet victoria*

*Heroum ductoribus,*

*Milites vinci nescios imperantibus;*

*Sed ILLE,*

*Qui in morte sola requiescit*

*Non famæ avidos,*

*Non bello peritissimos,*

*Non homines mortem temnentes*

*Sed bruta, vixque humani nominis dignos  
subditos invenit;*

*Etiam hos, compatriis ursis simillimos, et  
aversantes expoliivit;*

*Barbaritatis hereditariæ tenebras ille Phæ-  
bus fugavit.*

*Et*

**Book** *Et propria virtute Germanorum victores*  
**XVI.** *vicit.*



*Alii felicissime exercitus duxerunt, hic creavit.*

*Erubescere ars!*

*Hic vir maximus tibi nihil debuit:*

*Exulta natura!*

*Hoc stupendum tuum est.*

In English thus:

*Here deposited*

*Is all that could die of the immortal,*

**PETER ALEXOWITZ.**

*It is superfluous to add,*

**MONARCH of the Great Empire of**

**RUSSIA:**

*That crown, far from giving any lustre to  
 him,*

*Became illustrious by his wearing it.*

*Let antiquity be silent:*

*Let her boast no more her ALEXANDERS,*

*Or her CÆSARS:*

*It was easy to conquer, where every soldier  
 was a hero.*

*But HE,*

*Who never knew rest till now,*

*Found*

*Found not subjects skill'd in war,  
Souls who preferred fame before life:*

BOOK

XVI.



*His people might be said  
More to resemble the bears of their country  
than men;*

*Yet even these, untractable and barbarous as  
they were,*

*He civilized and polished.*

*He, like the rising Sun,*

*Dispelled their hereditary darkness;*

*And by the force of his innate genius  
Taught them to conquer the conquerors of  
Germany.*

*Other princes have led victorious armies:*

*His army he made himself.*

*Blush thou Art,*

*To see a hero who owed thee nothing!*

*Exult O nature!*

*This prodigy was all your own.*

## BOOK

## XVI.

Characters of some of the chief persons in the court of PETER the Great.

*The rise and character of Prince Menzekoff.*

PRINCE *Menzekoff* was a corporal's son of the *Prebrasinsky* regiment of guards, a smart roguish boy, called *Alexaska*, or little *Alexander*. When the Czar, being also young, took notice of him first, he took such a liking to the boy, that he would still have him about his person. As he grew in years, he improved in cunning: yet so illiterate, that with difficulty he could subscribe his name. During General *Lejort's* time he was but little regarded; but after his death he soon came into favour. One obstacle however remained, which was the Czar's mistress *Anna Joanowna Mons*, an exceeding beautiful young woman, endued with all the talents to please, except prudence and good sense, as by her actions will appear. This young woman after the Czar had cohabited with her for several years, (tho' no issue appeared) and had heaped riches upon her, and given her fine possessions, was so unwise as to discover a greater regard for one Mr. *Keyserling* the *Prussian* envoy. This man fond of the thoughts

thoughts of rivaling so great a monarch as Book  
 the Emperor of *Russia*, after having pro- XVI.  
 posed marriage to the lady, and secured her  
 affections, went with her consent to the  
 rising favourite *Alexaska* to make him their  
 friend; who being glad of the occasion,  
 gave him all imaginable encouragement;  
 telling him, he was very sure, since it was  
 her inclination, the Czar would never op-  
 pose it: but that before he spoke to his  
 majesty on the subject, he must have it from  
 her own mouth, and under her hand, that  
 she inclined to marry Mr. *Keyserling*. *A-*  
*lexaska* then sent a favourite lady of his,  
 one Madam *Weid*, to discourse her on the  
 subject; she frankly owned she liked Mr.  
*Keyserling*, and would marry him prefer-  
 able to all others, if the Czar would but a-  
 gree to it. There needed no more, *Ale-*  
*xaska* being informed of this, to make all  
 sure, went himself to wait on her, and re-  
 ceive her commands by write as well as  
 word.

Having procured his credentials, he im-  
 mediately repaired to the Czar, and in a sly  
 way said, Now, Sir, your majesty ever be-  
 lieved that your friend Mrs. *Mons* loved  
 you beyond all mankind; What would you  
 think if I should convince you of the con-  
 trary? Enough *Alexaska* (says the Czar), I  
 am so fully persuaded she can love none but

BOOK me, that nothing shall convince me of the  
 XVI. contrary, unless she tell me so much herself. Upon which, *Alexaska* took a paper out of his pocket, which satisfied the Czar so fully, that her disgrace may be dated from that moment. But to be yet more fully satisfied in the matter, the Czar went to visit her as formerly, and told her without passion what *Alexaska* had acquainted him with from her; which she not denying, the Czar upbraided her with her unfaithfulness and folly; then stript her of all the lands and fine things he had presented her with, particularly his picture set with diamonds, saying, she had no more use for that, since she put so small a value on the original, in preferring to him an abject slave. In short, he left her nothing but a good house, and some jewels he had given her from time to time. Some time after, she married Mr. *Keyserling*; but not being able to bear with her disgrace, she sickened and died within the year.

This lady being removed, *Alexaska* had no stop in his way, he became *Peter* the Great's chief favourite, studied his humour, and stuck at nothing to please him; was his constant companion in all his parties of pleasure, attended and served him in all places, and at the same time was not unmindful of himself. He was covetous to the

the last degree: what ever he took a fancy **BOOK** to he must have; a fine seat, a convenient **XVI.** estate, or the like; not the greatest man in the empire durst refuse him: and none stood their ground against him, except the Czar's relations the *Naritzkins*, Marshal *Sheremetoff*, Admiral *Apraxin*, Prince *Galitzen*, and some more of the great families: he knew very well those he durst meddle with, and them he spared not. The foreign officers he never durst attack, General *Goltz* only excepted, whose ruin he intended but without success. He pillaged all *Poland*; in so much that the plague which consumed multitudes of the inhabitants, did less prejudice to the country. He also raised vast sums even amongst the *Russians*; none durst own their having money, or if he came to the knowledge thereof, he was sure to have the largest share, otherways he would work their ruin. This behaviour made him odious to the whole nation, except a few persons whom he employed of his own kidney.

Most people were surprized he stood his ground so long: certainly (said they) he must in some shape or other, be exceeding useful to the Prince, or he must long ago have perished. The Czar often kicked him publicly and beat him like a dog, so that the by-standers concluded him undone, but always

BOOK ways next morning the peace was made up, XVI. which people believed could not proceed but from some preternatural cause. The belief of withchcraft and magical arts prevails much among the *Russians*.

When the Czar went first into foreign countries, *Menzekoff* accompanied him, and was comonly called Prince *Alexander*; tho' he was really no Prince until the year 1706. When by the force of presents at the court of *Vienna*, together with his being the Czar's favourite, he was by the Emperor *Joseph*, created a prince of the empire. He was no soldier, nor was he ever capable of a generous action; and all he did worth notice, was, that on the defeat of the King of *Sweden* at *Pultawa*, General *Levenhaupt* surrendered to him when he could make no better of it.

On the death of the Empress *Katharine*, Prince *Menzekoff* having been her Prime-councillor, and constantly about her, had the impudence to counterfeit a will, as if signed by her, wherein two particular points concerning his family (and the only material ones) were inserted, *viz.* That the great Duke the Emperor's grand-son, by the Czarowich *Alexis*, should marry none but Prince *Menzekoff's* daughter, and that his son, the young Prince *Menzekoff*, should marry the great Duke's sister; leaving her curse to all

wh9

who should oppose, or contradict the said Book will. XVI.

This was so great a piece of villany, and so far contrary to *Peter* the Great's intentions, viz. That the apparent heir of the empire should be married to none of his own subjects, but to some foreign Princess, (for the sake of alliance), that with his other barbarities and cruelties, it so inflamed the great men and the nation in general against him, that his ruin was determined. The great Duke being proclaimed Emperor, his grandmother, *Peter* the Great's first Empress was taken out of the convent, and brought to court, where she had all the honours paid her due to her rank.

Yet still, Prince *Menzekoff* was such a terror to most people, that few durst venture to attack him, till Baron *Osterman* a foreigner, an able minister, in concert with some of the most forward, attempted it; laying before the young Emperor and his grandmother, how dangerous this man was in the state, because of his immense riches; they aggravated the matter still more with the forgery of the late Empress *Katharine's* will, for every body believed it such. Besides he had been a great instrument in forwarding the Emperor's father the late Czarowich's sentence; all which produced the effect, that he was forthwith confined under

Bo o k a strong guard, and sent to *Siberia* in perpetual banishment, at the time when he was least expecting it. He submitted without opposition, saying only he wished to know his crime; that he was the Emperor's faithful servant and slave; with a great deal more to that purpose. His whole estate and effects were confiscated to the crown, amounting in land, money, jewels, and plate, &c. to the value of eight millions sterling which would seem incredible.

As he was on his way to *Siberia* he endeavoured to corrupt the guards, and make his escape, which he could not effectuate; so to *Siberia* he was carried, where he died not long after, overwhelmed with misery and grief. This is all that can be said of this man, who had been above twenty years sole favourite of the Emperor *Peter* the Great. He was an exceeding artful fellow, of a vast memory, but wicked above what can be imagined.

The character of *Eudoxia Theodrowna Lapachin*, *Peter* the Great's first Empress.

**EUDOXIA** *Theodrowna* was daughter to the Boyar *Theodore Abramowich Lapachin*, one of the principal families of the empire, exceeding beautiful; The Czar and

and she were married together young, neither of them above sixteen. The four first years they lived in great sympathy: but the Czar not liking to be shut up after the manner of his predecessors, delighting rather to be much abroad, and to divert himself mostly amongst foreigners, whose company he preferred to the natives; she turned morose and out of humour; then thinking to reclaim him from his liberties, she fell entirely into disgrace\*, so that he would see her no more: but caused put her into a convent, thinking to force her to become religious, that he might be at freedom to marry another: the Greek church allowing, that if either husband or wife retire from the world, the party remaining may marry again. This she had no mind to agree to, but told him if he would have her become a nun, he might come to the convent, and cut off her hair with his own hand, for none else should touch her body; which he not thinking fit to comply with, she continued in the cloister till after his death, that her grandson mounted the throne. Then returning to court, she was received with all suitable honour, and was

VOL. II.

N n

the

\* One cause of her disgrace was supposed to be Prince *Menzekoff's* revenge for some expressions that pointed at the lowness of his first condition: she complained of his carrying her husband among lewd women who had formerly been his customers for cakes.

BOOK the main instrument of Prince *Menzekoff's*  
 XVI. disgrace. Yet soon wearying of a court  
 life, in a few months she left it, being nat-  
 urally of a retired temper, or perhaps be-  
 come so by use, having lived the most part  
 of her time amongst the nuns, to whom she  
 returned, and continued with them to the  
 end of her days.

The character of *Boris Petrowitz*  
*Sheremetoff*, first Marshal of the  
 Emperor's armies.

**M**ARSHAL *Sheremetoff* was original-  
 ly of *Prussia*, of a very distinguished  
 family, especially in the wars; where they  
 had often held the chief command, and  
 generally with success. He was brought up  
 from his infancy in the army, and at length  
 came to command the *Russian* troops at *Bie-*  
*logrod*, on the frontiers of *Tartary*, where  
 he was Governor. He beat the *Tartars*  
 often, and tho' he never had to do with  
 any other enemy, till the war broke out  
 against *Sweden*, yet he came to understand  
 military affairs so well, that he took the  
 towns of *Derpt*, *Notteburg*, *Nyenschance*,  
 beat the *Swedes* at *Staynits*, *Swisterbeck*,  
 &c. in *Livonia*. He was the principal com-  
 mander next the Czar at the battle of *Pul-*  
*tawa*, after which he took *Riga*, &c. was

a brave old gentleman, much esteemed by the *Russian* Emperor, and generally beloved. He died aged above seventy, and was pompuously interred at St. *Petersburgh*. BOOK XVI.

### The character of Marshal *Ogilvie*.

**M**ARSHAL *Ogilvie* was of *Scots* extraction. His grand father entered into the *Austrian* service, during the reign of the Emperor *Ferdinand*, by whom for his good service he was created Baron of the empire. Our Marshal served from his youth in the imperial armies, sometimes on the *Rhine*, and sometimes in *Hungary* against the *Turks*, where he became a General-officer; and was near sixty years of age, before he entered into the *Russian* service. He commanded at the taking of *Narva*, brought off the *Russian* army with honour at *Grodno*, and introduced several points of discipline which the *Russians* were strangers to; he was much beloved by the army during his continuance in the service, which was but for three years, having made agreement for no longer time. He could never hit it with Prince *Menzekoff*, nor bear with his insolence; inso-much that he told the Czar before *Narva* was taken, that if he meddled with the orders he would have nothing to do with them: he was a prudent mild commander, and moderated

BOOK the rigour in the councils of war as to faults in  
 XVI. the service, saying the *Russians* were but in  
 ~~~~~ their infancy, and ought to be brought into  
 discipline by degrees. He went into King  
*Augustus's* service after he left the *Russian*:  
 died and was honourably interred at *Dresden*  
 in the year 1712.

### The character of the High-admiral *Apraxin.*

**T**HEODORE Mathewitz *Apraxin*,  
 a gentleman of an antient and oppu-  
 lent family in *Russia*, was brought up from  
 his youth about the court. A sister of his  
 being married to Czar *Theodore*, elder bro-  
 ther to the Czars *John* and *Peter*. The  
 office and dignity of High-admiral was con-  
 ferred on him in the year 1705. Tho' he  
 had no manner of knowledge in maritime  
 affairs, yet being a man of good sense and  
 application, he came in time to under-  
 stand matters so well, and comprehend eve-  
 ry thing that belonged to the fleet, and gave  
 his orders so distinctly, that the Czar as  
 well as the sea officers were perfectly well  
 satisfied with him. He was ever faithful to  
 the Emperor; a prudent friendly honest  
 man, generally esteemed, and a mortal e-  
 nemy to Prince *Menzekoff*, and none more  
 active in his disgrace. He was a lover of  
 foreigners,

foreigners, and took great pleasure in conversing with them, especially those who understood any thing of sea affairs; curious to learn, as most of the *Russians* are. BOOK XVI.

### The character of General Prince Galitzen.

**G**ENERAL Prince *Michael Michaelowitz Galitzèn* was of an old *Russian* family originally of *Poland*. He was esteemed by the Czar himself, and by all the foreign officers, the ablest commander of all the *Russians*, and had such a curious turn that he got all the plans of the battles and most considerable sieges during the last long war betwixt the confederates and the *French*; as also of those betwixt the Emperor of *Germany* and the *Turks*. He was a brave and fortunate officer, was concerned in all the great actions such as *Lesno*, *Pultawa*, and the *Pruth* (where the Czar commanded in person), besides the conquests of *Finland*, &c. He was much esteemed both by natives and foreigners. He was Lieutenant-general, and commander of the guards at the age of thirty-two, and lived universally beloved to a good age.

The

## BOOK

## XVI.

The character of the Czarowich  
*Alexis.*

THE Czarowich *Alexis* was quite neglected in his education, and had attained to the age of fourteen before he was taken out of the hands of the women and clergy, who had already impressed him with such bad maxims and sentiments, creating in him so great an aversion to all improvements, and foreign methods, that it was scarcely possible to remove them. At last the Czar being sensible of this neglect, appointed him a Governor, one *Nygebower* a *German*, a brutal fellow who had no civility, but affronted the Prince on all occasions, which made things worse and increased his hatred to foreigners. Perhaps if his father had removed the *Russians*, and placed good people about him, I mean foreigners, at the age of ten or twelve years, then sent him abroad quite out of *Russia*, where the impressions of his youth might have been removed, and continued him in foreign countries till he had attained to the age of twenty, this Prince might have made a compleat gentleman, for he was far from being a fool: but this method being neglected, the poor unhappy Prince was absolutely lost. All those who frequented him flattered him  
in

in his humours, (even those whom his father placed about him) in hopes no doubt of gaining his favour, in the event of his coming to the throne. Mr. *Kekin*, who was otherways a fine gentleman, was the principal cause of his fall, by encouraging him in all his follies: he had been bred up at court by the Empress *Eudoxia*, whose hard treatment he always as far as he durst resented; and when he perceived the Czar intended to exclude the Czarowich from the succession, he advised him at first to go privately into *France*; but afterwards he advised him to go to *Vienna*, and put himself under the protection of the Emperor. But if he had rightly considered, his first counsel was the best: for the Czarowich should not have put himself under the protection of any Prince who had a connexion with *Russia*, such as the *German* Emperor particularly had, on account of the wars with the *Turks*. *France* in all probability would have been the safest retreat for the Czarowich; and his friends and advisers by this means had been all safe: whereas, having recourse to the Emperor's protection, it is generally believed he was forced to return to the Czar; as appeared by his manifesto, (1718) tho' the Emperor was unwilling to have it thought he had refused his protection.

BOOK on. Accordingly he wrote the Czar a letter \* complaining much of some expressions in that manifesto. But in my humble opinion, the Emperor should have refused to protect him from the beginning, and allowed him to retire where he had a mind, rather than after granting him protection, with assurance that he would not deliver him up to his father, to force him to return †. The rest of this unfortunate Prince's life is already narrated.

### Character of the Princess *Natalia*.

THO' the women in this country are generally very pretty, and when they get into the use of company, soon become very polite fine ladies; yet above all,  
*Peter*

\* This letter is to be found in the Historical Register for the year 1722.

† Notwithstanding all the greatness, the successes, and amusements of the Emperor *Peter*, this melancholy event in his own family, must have affected him very sensibly! He was by no means void of natural affection, nor could he be insensible of what the world might say on that occasion. He had not been without his mortifications and disturbances before: conspiracies against his life: disappointments in several of his designs: and one vexatious article in his love affairs, viz. his mistress's quitting him for a *Prussian* envoy. Many other things may be supposed to have interrupted his pleasures: however, he still kept his great design stedfastly in view; the polishing and improving his vast empire in every thing; not even forgetting religion. By his order, the Archbishop of *Kiew* drew up a Catechism, which was printed in the *Russian* language.

*Peter* the Great's full sister, the Princess **BOOK**  
*Natalia*, was famous for her beauty and **XVI.**  
graceful behaviour. This Princess com-  
plied very much with her brother's humour,  
and was the first that admitted of and went  
into company.

This incomparable Princess died unmarried, aged not much above forty, universally regreted. She always retained her good looks and charming behaviour, and would have graced the most exalted throne in *Europe*.

*End of the Sixteenth Book.*





# APPENDIX.

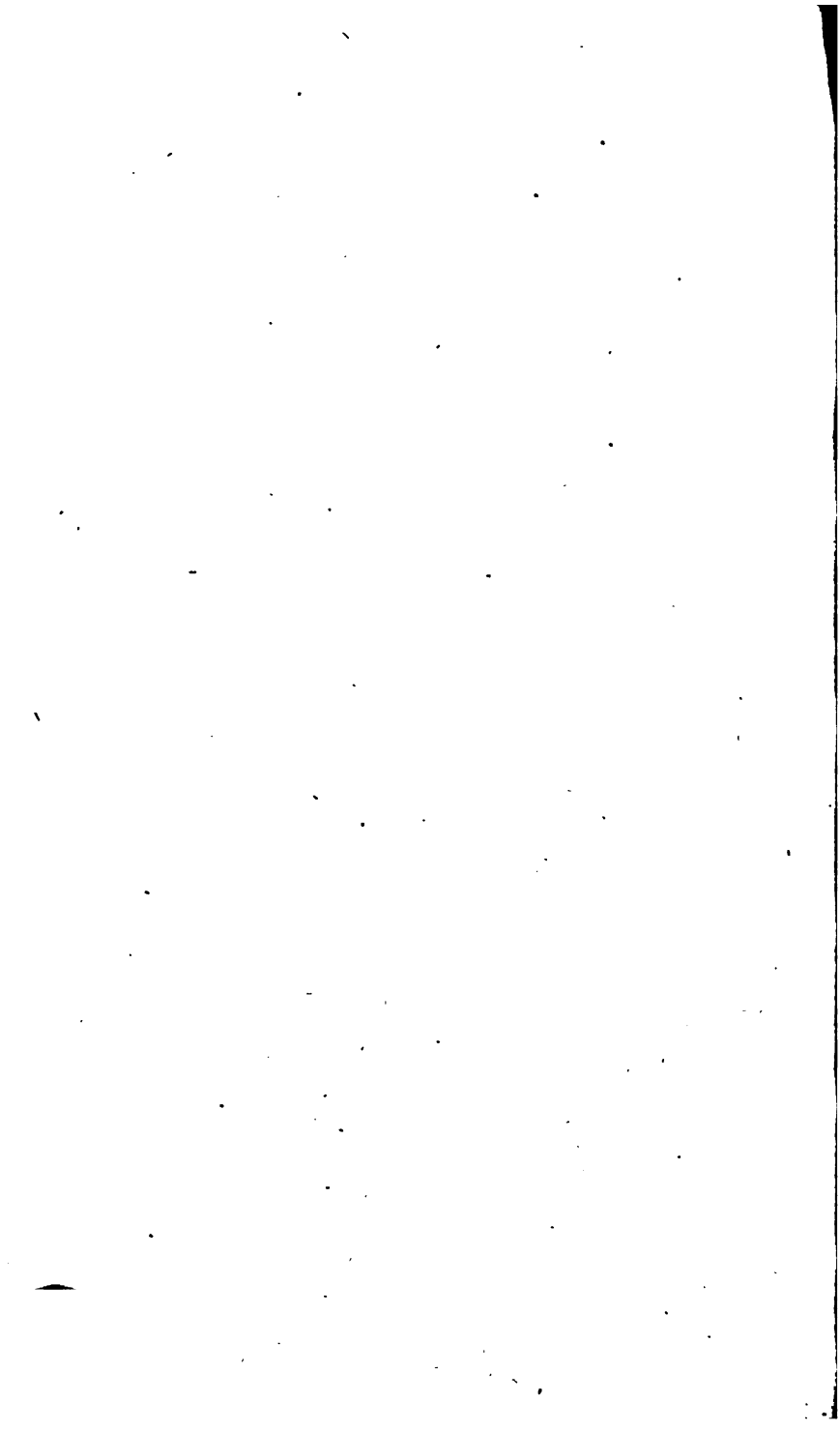




---

# APPENDIX.

---



# APPENDIX.

---

## Description of *St. Petersburg*.

*Taken from a Letter from Mr. WYLDE,  
Resident of the States General at the  
court of Russia.*

ALL the maps, says *Monfieur de Wylde*, being erroneous as to the situation of *St. Petersburg*, I give myself the honour to inform you, that the river *Neva* or *Nye* is twelve common leagues long, or seventy-two wersts, according to the measure of these parts; from the island *Riszard* or *Richard*, as it is commonly, tho' falsely called, in which stands *Cronstat*, abusively taken in several maps for *St. Petersburg*, to *Orescha*, or *Notteburgh*, now called *Sleutelburgh*; that is, in other words, from the gulf of *Finland* to the lake *Ladoga*, and that *St. Petersburg* is situated along that river, within five leagues from *Cronstat*, and seven from *Sleutelburgh*. That river is so broad near *Cronstat*, that from one side one can hardly perceive, without glasses, the opposite bank; but it grows narrower as you go to *St. Petersburg*, where it is but about one hundred  
and

and seventy toises, or about one thousand feet broad, and continues much the same to the lake *Ladoga*. *Schanterny* is situated a league above *St. Petersburg*; but that town is so large, that it reaches to that fort, and has a very large circuit.

The town of *St. Petersburg* may be divided into two parts; one of which is in terra firma, on the side of *Ingria*; and the other consists of five large islands. The admiralty is in one of the said islands, being parted from the town only by a narrow canal, in which there are several bridges of communication; and amongst others, a very fine one, which comes to the highway or road from *St. Petersburg* to *Moscow*; of which I shall further speak, after having taken notice of some other particulars.

His Czarish majesty has two palaces, one for winter and another for summer, on the *Ingria* side; but they have erected in the island, on the opposite side, by which runs the great current, or channel of the river, the citadel, the council-house, the chancery, the magazines, and the exchange for merchants; which is troublesome enough, because there is no coming at it but by boats. They are building very much upon the island *Bazil*, or *Wassis-Oestroff*. Prince *Menzekoff* has there a palace near the great river; and all the lords of the court are obliged

obliged to build stone houses in the same place. They are also erecting there a large edifice, in which merchants will be obliged to have shops and sell their goods therein.

The houses of *St. Petersburg* are already computed to exceed forty thousand; but most of them have but one story: a great many are built with timber; and those that are built with stone are but indifferent: some others are built with bricks, covered over with mortar on both sides: they seem at first very fine, being built according to a new architecture, half *French* and half *Italian*; but when that mortar falls to pieces, which happens shortly after, by reason of the great frosts, and other injuries of the air, they have but a disagreeable aspect.

The streets are broad, and in a straight line; but amongst others there is one beginning at the admiralty, which is above half a league long, in a straight line, and so broad, that two rows of trees are planted on both sides. That street, or rather the road that joins to it, has been extended to fifty leagues distance from *St. Petersburg*, through forrests and other difficult places; and the Czar designs to continue it to *Moscow*.

Description

Description of *Cronstat*.

*From a late celebrated collection of Travels.*

THE island of *Cronstat* is near fifteen miles in circumference, but very barren: the town is computed to have near twenty-five thousand inhabitants, including soldiers and sailors: besides this, there are only two or three small villages for fishermen. Here is a palace built by *Peter* the Great, and about twenty-five large brick-houses; but the support of them being expensive, they are left uninhabited. In this place, *Peter* the Great had formed a plan of fixing the trade, and designed to cut a canal near twenty miles long, on the south side of the gulf, which would have passed through the garden of *Strelna Musa*. The intent of this, was to provide a safe passage for barks loaded with the commodities of this country: however, this project was hardly practicable, for it would be dangerous for large and heavy laden barks to cross from *Orenjenbaun* to *Cronstat*; but the common reason assigned for this great Prince's declining this scheme, is, that it would have prevented his breeding up the seamen, who are now constantly employed during the summer season in navigating  
decked

decked vessels laden with merchandize from St. *Petersburgh* to *Cronstat*.

Here is one of the greatest curiosities in the world of its kind; which is the dry <sup>The dry</sup> dock, contrived by *Peter* the Great. This <sup>dock.</sup> work, by the length of time it has been in hand, and the alterations made by the different directors of it, must have created a large expence. It reaches about seven hundred fathoms, is sixty feet broad at the bottom, eighty feet at the top, and forty feet deep, having flood-gates in different parts. It is intended to receive fourteen ships of the line of battle, to build or repair them dry, and afterwards float them off. There is a grand reservoir, which was <sup>Reservoir.</sup> then almost dug eighteen feet lower than the docks, and consequently is near sixty feet deep; and yet there were no springs which incommoded the workmen: it is about six hundred feet long, and three hundred broad, and will contain about one hundred and forty thousand tons of water. The harbour or wet dock, intended for the <sup>The har-</sup> crown ships, will contain eighty men of <sup>bour.</sup> war; and in that for the trade, two hundred and fifty merchant ships can be moored; but the latter having the deepest water, is oftentimes kept for the large ships of war.

## Account of the Revenues, Taxes, Forces and Dress of the *Russians*.

Revenue.

**T**HE revenues of the *Russian* empire, which were formerly of five millions only, are now increased to fifteen millions of rubles (*a*), and are yet improveable, without distressing the subject. These may be computed to arise from the pole tax of seventy-five copeeks a head, on eight millions seven hundred and fifty thousand male subjects. The boyar, or lord, receives of his boors about one hundred and twenty copeeks (*b*) each head male, according to the goodness of the estate: some bring in yet more considerably, and others cannot support themselves. The Lord has also a certain number of them to work for him, but he pays the tax due to the crown on all his vassals; and after a revision is made, the same tax continues, whatever mortality may succeed, till a further revision takes place. The *Circassians* who inhabit the *Ukraine*, pay but a quarter of a ruble a head. The customs in *St. Petersburg*, *Riga*, *Narva* and *Archangel*, produce above a million of rubles; and the monopoly of salt, pot-ash, rhubarb, spirituous liquors, with the produce of the government's iron mines in *Siberia*,

(*a*) Three millions *Sterling*.

(*b*) One ruble, and a fifth, or five shillings and a penny.

beria, the *China* trade, and inland duties, constitute the remainder. This sum of three millions *Sterling*, which we have learned in *Great Britain* the art of swallowing in a three or four months campaign, answers the exigencies of the *Russian* state, and makes them courted by their friends, and dreaded by their enemies: nor is it strange, if one considers that the pay of a Major-general in *Russia* is not above three thousand six hundred rubles a year (*c*), a Commandant or Brigadier one thousand eight hundred, a Colonel eight hundred, a Major four hundred, a Captain one hundred and eighty, a Lieutenant one hundred and twenty, and a common soldier six. They are said to have at least two hundred and fifty thousand regulars, including garrisons of seventy thousand; and supposing a third part of them cloathed annually, and giving them their allowance of salt, croop (*d*), and bread, their pay will hardly exceed thirty rubles (*e*) a man, officers included; and consequently, this formidable force costs only seven millions five hundred thousand rubles (*f*), which does not take up half the national income.

Pay of the  
foldiery.

Number  
of forces.

P p 2

The

(*c*) Seven hundred and fifty pounds.

(*d*) A species of meal.

(*e*) Six pounds ten shillings.

(*f*) One million five hundred and seventy-five thousand pounds *Sterling*.

Fleet.

The *Russian* naval power, which was created by *Peter* the Great, appears to be sufficient for all the purposes of that empire, and capable of supporting their new conquests on the *Baltick*, should the *Swedes* ever attempt to retake them by a naval power; though I believe the friendship of the *British* nation, as a maritime power, is no unpleasing circumstance to *Russia* upon this very account. Their fleet consists of twenty-five ships of the line, and fifteen bomb-ketches, fire-ships and frigates, of about thirty guns each; of which the greatest part are kept in repair: and one, two, or three capital ships are built and launched every year at *St. Petersburg*; but what gives a great weight to their naval strength, is the number of their galleys, which carry from one hundred to three hundred men, of which, only six or eight are sailors. These are proper for the *Baltick* in the summer; and as they draw but little water, they are formidable objects on an enemy's coast, as the *Swedes* experienced in their war with *Peter* the Great. The *Russians* are computed to have near ten thousand seamen; of which, above half generally live at *Cronstat*, and when employed as carpenters, or about ship affairs, are allowed provisions and ten copecks a-day.

The

The collection of the revenues, which is so vast an expence in *England*, is a very in-considerable charge to the *Russian* government, their collectors being mostly paid by the perquisites annexed to their employments; from hence, it is easy to reconcile how indispensably necessary presents are in *Russia* in transacting business with any of the public departments, though I must own my opinion, that perquisites tend to the ruin of empires.

The number of souls in *St. Petersburg* are generally computed at two hundred and fifty thousand, including the garrison, which is numerous; but in reckoning the subjects throughout the whole empire, they lay it down as a rule, that the hundred and seventy fifth male raises an army of near fifty thousand men, and consequently supposing an equal number of females, the whole may be reckoned seventeen millions five hundred thousand souls: the tributary *Tartars*, *Russian Ukraine* (*g*), and the conquered provinces (*h*), are not included in this account; if we consider the vast extent of that empire, though many parts are not inhabited, it is probable this number is near the truth. As to the *Ukraine*, I have been assured that one estate in that country (*i*) contained

(*g*) The word signifies frontier.

(*h*) *Livonia*, *Estonia*, *Ingria* and part of *Finland*,

(*i*) Count *Gollosin's*.

tained sixteen thousand acres of arable, and nine thousand of pasture land.

Besides the ordinary computation of two hundred and fifty thousand regulars, the *Russians* can collect a body of forty thousand, or more, of *Calmucks*, *Cossacks*, and other *Tartars*. In the last *Turkish* war I have been assured that *Russia* had above three hundred thousand troops in pay; thus with their own money at home, or in foreign pay, when abroad in foreign service, so long as these people train up a number of good officers, they must have great weight in the political scale in *Europe*, as well as in *Asia*. Their soldiers bear the extremities of cold and heat, hunger and thirst; and when well conducted to the charge, have generally shewn great intrepidity. Being provoked by long resistance they are apt to be cruel when conquerors, of which I have heard several stories from those who served in the last *Turkish* war.

**Dress.**

The common people in this country are cloathed with long coats made of drest sheep skins, with the wool towards their bodies. These are admirably adapted to the climate, and cost only two rubles (*k*); they also use a coarse cloth, in which they swadle their legs and feet; this is secured by a cord of reeds, their sandals being also of the same material.

(*k*) Nine shillings.

material. Their caps are lined with fur, and cover the ears and neck as well as their heads: they wear sashes round their waste, and double gloves, one of woollen and the other of leather, which take in the hand without any distinction, except the thumb; and these are also an essential part of their cloathing.

People of any distinction for the most part dress as we do in *England*, and are under no other necessity than that of wearing a full great coat lined with fur (*l*), such as wolf's, fox's, or linx's, with a deep quilted or fur lined cap when they go abroad. The women of the lower class, besides their petticoats, wear sheep skins, as the men: those who move in a higher sphere, wear flowered silk cloaks (*m*) lined with furs, of which the most common sort is of white hares. Ladies of the first distinction are seldom without these cloaks lined with rich furs, and by the advantage of coaches or sledges and domestic conveniences, perhaps suffer less by cold than the people in the south of *France*: although, upon the whole, I can by no means think it a climate conducive to the prolongation of life, especially to aged persons, and valetudinarians.

#### Anecdotes

(*l*) The *Russians* call it a shoobe.

(*m*) There are two kinds, some with and some without arms.

## Anecdotes of PETER the Great.

THE most early part of this Prince's life gave such proof of a mind formed for great actions, that he seemed to be a man from his infancy, and with his manhood the hero grew up to that prodigious height, of which he gave the world so many proofs.

The intimations he had received from foreigners of the government, arts, and improvements of other countries, made him weep over the ignorance and barbarity of his own; but his sorrow gave way to his hopes; and fired with the noble ardour of true greatness, he resolved to pursue it by the only path which, from the light of his own genius, he discovered to lead to it. He had too good a judgment to attempt the thing by any means but those which alone were practicable. How amazing was his resolution, who was born to empire, and had an absolute power over so many millions of people, to humble himself to the low offices and laborious drudgery of life! But he saw that example, assisted by his boundless authority, could alone inspire his people with just sentiments, or compel them to a due obedience; and that the opulency and power of nations must arise from useful arts and

and mechanic employments: he sought that power and opulency at their fountain head, and determined in his own person to act as much like a GOD as a man could do, diffusing his influence by actions, the due effect of which, humanly speaking, it was impossible for any man, except himself, to produce. Thus he submitted as if he had been born only to a mean and low fortune; and determined to do that which should deserve a crown; and when he had obtained it, to take on him the true glory of a King, in wearing it gracefully, and according to the order of that providence which watches over the good of mankind. His actions demonstrate that he thought it more glorious to excel as an artificer or mechanic, than to sway a sceptre upon no other title than his birth.

It is hard to say what the world has lost in the journal which he kept himself; probably it contained what no historian can pretend to relate of him. I shall mention a few particulars which I do not find recorded of him in any historical accounts, being what I learned of persons with whom he frequently conversed. In *Amsterdam* he entered in a dock-yard as a common carpenter, in the name of *Peter Michaillo*, but he was known only to the master of the yard. It happened one day that *Peter*, by mi-

stake, took the tools of another person instead of his own; the owner discovering his tools in the hands of his companion, and these not being readily restored to him, words ensued, and the man gave *Peter* a blow; the master of the yard being informed of the matter, sent for the supposed offender, and in the presence of this Prince reproved him severely, and threatened him with punishment. *Peter* now put on the Emperor, not in the insolence of power, and with the externals of a King, but in pleading for the injured. ‘The man says he, ‘is in the right, and I am in fault;’ and immediately made up the quarrel by giving him money. Thus did this great monarch learn the true art of life and government, and through this voluntary arduous discipline, teach himself how to rule the spirits of an ignorant and uncivilized people.

It has been imputed to this Prince, that he was cruel. The exact rule of mercy and justice cannot always be observed by any mortal man: and least of all by princes, who cannot search to the bottom of every thing. A man of his strength of resolution, cannot be supposed to have a heart of the melting sort; and the ingratitude and insensibility of his subjects, their repugnance to accept the terms of their own felicity by the means he sought it for them, means

means so obviously productive of the end, and yet so obstinately resisted, could not but fire him with some resentment, and might also persuade him they could be ruled only by a rod of iron. Thus he might commit some acts of severity, but that he put men to death with his own hand, I am persuaded is not true (*n*).

An amorous disposition, and a cruel one, are compatible in the same person, as experience often evinces; but cruelty and greatness of mind, such as this Prince demonstrated, are not compatible. His great foible was the love of women; he was not profuse, nor even generous in his amours, if one may believe the reports of Miss *Cross*, who was distinguished, in her way, by the Emperor's favour in *England*. In *Holland* he was seen with a girl in his arms at a common drinking-house, of which representation there is now an excellent picture in the palace of *Peterhoff*. A gardiner once threw a hough at him for his amorous advances to a girl who was working in a garden. In short, for a King he was as little elegant as expensive in his amours: as in things of the highest moment, so in this he acted according to his inclinations, without any regard

Q q 2 to

(*n*) In the case of the rebellion, suppressed by General *Gordon*, historians mention his being angry that the executions were not performed before his arrival at *Moscow*.

to forms. It is true, in this instance he was no hero, but as servilely submissive to an imperious appetite as a common man: and it seemed in him but mere appetite, at least we do not find that the torment or pleasure arising from a passionate indulgence, or a reasonable government of this weakness, ever drew him into inconveniences, or protracted the progress of that active and extensive glory for which he was so much distinguished: and for this vice, we must say with Sir *Walter Raleigh*, as well as I remember, ‘ If ‘ *Adam* in his state of innocence; *David* ‘ *God’s* chosen servant; and *Solomon*, a ‘ man of the greatest wisdom, swerved from ‘ their duty to the living *God*, through the ‘ love they bore to woman, it is not so ‘ wonderful as lamentable that men in all ‘ succeeding ages have, &c.’ This great Prince, who understood so well what regarded the good of the society, could hardly exclude the religion he professed from the system of his politics; and we may charitably presume that he, like *David*, made his peace with heaven.

He was often seen to weep when he ordered executions. Miss *Hambleton*, (o) a maid of honour to the Empress *Katharine*, had an amour which at different times produced three children: she had always pleaded sickness,

(o) Some call this lady *Mackenzie*.

sickness, but *Peter* being suspicious, ordered his physician to attend her, who soon made the discovery. It also appeared that a sense of shame had triumphed over her humanity, and that the children had been put to death as soon as born. *Peter* enquired if the father of them was privy to the murder; the lady insisted that he was innocent, for she had always deceived him, by pretending they were sent to nurse. Justice now called on the Emperor to punish the offence. The lady was much beloved by the Empress, who pleaded for her: as to the amour it would have been pardonable, but not the murder. *Peter* sent her to the castle, and went himself to visit her: the fact being confessed, he pronounced her sentence with tears, telling her that his duty as a Prince, and God's Vicegerent, called on him for that justice which her crime had rendered indispensably necessary: and therefore she must prepare for death. He attended her also upon the scaffold, where he embraced her with the utmost tenderness mixed with sorrow: and some say, that when her head was struck off, he took it up by the ear whilst the lips were yet trembling, and kissed them: a circumstance of an extraordinary nature, and yet not incredible, considering the peculiarities of his character.

How

How generous was his conduct to the *Swedish* prisoners at the battle of *Pultawa*! He struck one of his own officers for speaking disrespectfully of the King of *Sweden* (*p*), and said to him, ‘Am I not a King, and might not my fortune have been the same as that Prince’s?’ But what a profusion of sound politics was displayed in his taking his sword from his own side, and presenting it as a token of his favour to the *Swedish* General *Renchild*, upon the occasion of that General’s saying, ‘though the King my master acted contrary to my opinion, yet I thought myself bound, as a faithful subject, to obey his commands.’

As it is the custom with us to interrupt conversation by drinking healths at table, in *Russia* they add also another impertinence, by their servants offering wine whether you ask for it or not. *Peter* was in warm discourse with Admiral *Apraxin*, when the Vice-admiral *Senavin* presented him with a salver of wine; the Emperor impatiently threw back his arm, which necessarily overset the salver and struck the Admiral: he then pursued his discourse, as if nothing had happened; afterwards recollecting himself, he asked the Admiral *Apraxin* if he had not struck

(*p*) To this purpose, we may remember the story of the *Persian* soldier, who was told, ‘Sir, you are paid to fight against *Alexander*, not to rail at him.’

struck some body? ‘ Yes, says he, your majesty struck the Vice-admiral *Senavin*; ‘ ’tis true, he was in the wrong for interrupting your majesty; but he is a very honest man, and a brave officer.’ *Peter* then reproached himself for striking an officer of that rank, sent for him immediately, begged his pardon, kissed him, and the next day sent him a present.

*Valensky*, who had a command in the *Persian* expedition, had been once beaten by *Peter*’s orders, mistaking him for another. ‘ Well, says *Peter*, I am sorry for it, but you will deserve it one day or other, and then remind me that you are in arrears with me;’ which accordingly happened upon that very expedition, and he was excused.

Thus did this great Prince temper the natural impetuosity of his disposition with the utmost tenderness and regard to those who deserved well of him. It is known that he himself submitted to enter his name as a private man in the army he raised, that his greatest subjects might have no expectations of any other advancement than what should be due to their merit. He had most experience as a General, but his favourite passion inclined to the marine: he more than once appeared incognito as a common pilot, and received an *English* crown and a cheese for

for bringing a ship from the bar to *Cronstat*.

This Prince had to contend not only with the perverseness of the vulgar; he found it necessary to teach the highest orders of his people to submit to the wholesome restraints of good laws. *Gagarin*, a senator, had been for some time Governor of *Siberia*, and accumulated more than a just ministerial fortune by indirect practices, particularly by oppressing the caravans passing to and from *China*: at length, he was brought to *St. Petersburg*, condemned and hanged on a gallows erected opposite the senate-house. After a few days, the senators begged that his majesty would order the body to be removed, intimating that it was a scandal to their rank as senators. 'Yes, says the Emperor, let him be taken down then, and hung up at the common gallows;' which was accordingly performed.

The story of his supposed intrigue with *Baron Gortz* to invade *England*, is mentioned by some historians: however that affair might be, he always denied it, but found matter of complaint against his Vice-chancellor *Shafferoff*, who after being brought to the block, his sentence was changed into banishment. Upon a further examination of his papers it appeared, that during his  
ministry

ministry at the *Hague*, he had accepted a sum of ten thousand pounds for the discovery of a secret: *Peter* having received this evidence of his minister's guilt, would have recalled him to execution. *Osterman*, afterwards Vice-chancellor, represented to the Emperor, that as he had pardoned *Shafferoff*, who had not been since guilty of any fresh crime, such an action would fully his honour: to which advice, though highly offended, he submitted.

*Westphalen*, the Danish minister at the Russian court, had sent a remarkable piece of news to *Copenhagen*; *Peter*, by means of his minister in that city, procured *Westphalen's* own letter, and then challenged him upon the subject; *Westphalen* flatly denied that he had given any such intelligence, till *Peter* produced his letter; upon which he very coolly replied, 'I see princes have long arms; your majesty knows very well the duty I owe to my own Prince and country: was I in your majesty's service, I should consult your interest with the same fidelity.' *Peter*, though extremely disgusted, acquiesced in this defence.

We must not be surprized that this Prince, while he was only a pupil in the school of greatness, condescended to menial offices, or low mechanic employments, when only personal labour and personal

knowledge could answer the end he had in view. In the height of his glory, and after the completion of his conquest, he had so entire a contempt of these external circumstances which sometimes constitute the whole of a King, except the power annexed to royalty, that he seemed ambitious only of a sovereignty in soul, and to act rather than appear the King. He had an extreme dislike to rich cloaths, and was never so well satisfied as in his regimentals(*q*): he never wore but one suit of embroidery, and that for a single day only. In the summer time it was his usual custom to drive about the streets of *St. Petersburg* in a chair with one horse, without any other attendance than one soldier on horseback. In winter, he has been several times seen in a common hackney sledge(*r*). It would sometimes happen that he had not the value of three-pence in his pocket to pay the fare; and he has more than once asked the loan of this money of any person whom he knew, and accidentally

(*q*) A green cloth with a narrow gold lace, which is the richest cloathing in the army; and the *Russians* as well as the *Prussians* are not permitted to wear any other cloaths than their regimentals. The Empress however made her sea officers very fine, their cloaths being white cloth, and the captains have gold lace enough upon it to consume a good part of their pay.

(*r*) These are in value about four shillings; they are drawn by small horses, and driven by the commonest boors.

ly met; yet notwithstanding these seeming improprieties, the superiority of his genius supported the dignity of a great monarch; and it was by laying aside pomp and splendor, which were unessential to his glory, that he appeared so much like a deity, in every place, almost at one and the same time. He was generally at his tribunals and public offices in the winter season by five in the morning; and thus his personal attendance and knowledge of business, taught his subjects their respective duties; confined them to those duties, and made the state flourish. He was not contented without going to the bottom of things, and therefore, instead of making his people wait on him, he watched them; so that he was seldom to be found in the palace. Prince *Menzekoff* had the charge of public feasts for foreign ministers, so that *Peter* spent no time in vain ceremonies; and as to his own diet, it was rather coarse than elegant.

It is morally impossible that such a country as *Russia* was, could be more speedily reduced to a regular and consistent plan of government; but the extremity of arbitrary power, which had long subsisted, and the unpolished manners which had for so many ages prevailed, seemed to have established a rule of *Asiatick* policy, which *Peter* was not able, or not willing intirely to destroy:

this consisted in a sort of connivance in the Prince, in seeing the grandees pillage the lower classes of the people, according as their offices might afford them an occasion; but when they had thus accumulated wealth, and rendered themselves obnoxious to the laws, their sovereign came in for the plunder, either by degrading the offender, or suffering him to ransom one part by delivering up the other.

But it is amazing, that this great Prince did not enter seriously into the consideration of the bad administration of the laws, with regard to property and justice, till the very close of his life, and in his last sickness. The resolution he then took, confined the determination of common causes to the term of eleven days; but it was no more than a flash of light which involves the traveller in greater darkness. Laws which are so obviously intended to support the society, are now in the most parts of *Europe* so perversely wrested to the purposes of lawyers, to the eternal reproach of christendom, as to become the plague and distress of the virtuous; and the instrument of the most detestable conduct of the base and corrupt part of mankind: nor is there, I believe, a single country in all *Europe*, except *Prussia*, either in limited or arbitrary monarchies, where this is not complained of as a most crying

crying abuse. Had this great Prince lived a few years longer to sway the *Russian* sceptre, it is more than probable he would have shewn the King of *Prussia* that example, which this Prince, who deserves to be called Great, had he no other virtue, has given to all the other sovereigns and nations in *Europe*.

After what I have observed of the condescensions familiar to *Peter* the Great, the reader will not be surprized that he conversed with all sorts of people of whom he could learn any thing useful; among whom, some of the *English* and other foreign merchants were frequently his companions. He eat and drank with them, and was often godfather to their children: if his godchild died, he has even more than once attended their funerals. He was very inquisitive about trade, yet he confessed it was what he least understood: but his establishment of the commerce in *St. Petersburg*, and bringing the greatest part of it from *Archangel*; the premiums he offered to those who should find out new branches of trade; his setting up and encouraging new manufactories of linen and hemp in his own country; the great countenance he gave to foreign merchants, and many other such like circumstances, are certain indications that he understood, in many instances the  
means

means of advancing commerce as well as the great end of it.

This Prince made even his pleasures and amusements subservient to the important ends of his government. He had more than once received very melancholy proofs of the impatience of his subjects under the reformation which he had planned, and was now accomplishing: this rendered him extremely suspicious of them. As men's hearts are generally most open in their cups, he often drank with them liberally; sometimes at court, and oftner at their own houses. His manners seemed to be rude, in requiring even the ladies, upon certain occasions, to swallow goblets of wine, or other strong liquors; but in this he had his views: drinking is still the vice of *Russia*, but in a more elegant manner than in past times.

He had frequent convulsive distortions of his head and countenance, contracted by a fright in his youth, upon an occasion when his life was in danger; but in such cases, it was always the rule of the company he was in, to look down, or a different way, and pursue their discourse without seeming to regard him.

To prevent a surprize, or any attempt on his life, he would never ly alone: when he was not with the Empress or other companion,

nion, he ordered one of his chamberlains (s) to sleep with him; which was an uncomfortable situation to them, as he was very angry if they awaked him; and in his sleep he often grasped them very hard.

What compleated his character as a master of exquisite art and acute judgment, he diverted his people into a contempt of that fordid ignorance which for so many ages had reigned in this country, and which he now made it his task to banish. This could not be done more effectually, than by ridiculing a superstitious reverence of the customs of their forefathers. With this view, he ordered a great number of dresses of the several officers of the crown and court as worn in past ages; and in these, himself and his whole court appeared in masquerade: thus exhibiting themselves to the people under several comic figures, they diverted them into a persuasion that they were at least as wise in their age, and in their appearances, as their fathers had been before them.

A

(s) Whom the *Russians* call *Denshicks*.

## A succinct account of *Russian* Coins, Weights and Measures.

**I**T is remarkable, that when the *Russian* trade began to flourish, and for some time after, their ruble, which was intrinsically worth no less than ninety-nine current stivers of *Holland*, was estimated on exchange at seventy current stivers, and the price of their commodities regulated accordingly in the merchants calculation of them: at length, it was reduced to fifty, and from forty-five to fifty it has stood for many years. The *Russian* ruble has too considerable an alloy to encourage the exportation, but it is not so base as to induce any piratical traders to bring false coin into the country; I speak of the silver money. But by an error in politics in a late reign, the want of money induced the government to make a copper coin of five copecks value, which was not intrinsically worth two: the consequence of which was, that some millions of this coin was run in upon them, particularly by the *Jews* of *Poland*; so that at length, in the year 1744, 1745 and 1746, the government wisely reduced the value each year a copeck, and it now stands at two copecks. They keep accounts in rubles and copecks, one hundred copecks

to a ruble (*t*), and their old way of reckoning yet in the greatest use, as it is in some parts of *Germany*, is with beads on wires, which they work without pen and ink.

The ruble, which is the principal coin, is also divided into halves, quarters, and tenths; which last they call greevens: they had formerly silver copeek pieces, but these were too intrinsically good to continue long in the country, and were at length called in. They have a gold coin, of two rubles value, but not in abundance; also ducats of the present Empress's coin; which vary in price, but are never under  $2\frac{1}{4}$  rubles. In copper, they have besides the two copeeks already mentioned, denishkas, or half a copeek, and polushkas or quarters.

*Their* DRY MEASURES are,

- 4 Wocemik, - - 1 Cheterwit, =  $\frac{1}{4}$ ths of  
an *English* peck.  
8 Cheterwits, - - 1 Chetworth, ordi-  
narily computed =  
to 23, to 24 pecks,  
or 6 bushels *Eng-  
lish*.

VOL. II. S F LIQUID

(*t*) Worth about four shillings and three-pence.

## LIQUID MEASURE.

|                        |       |                                            |
|------------------------|-------|--------------------------------------------|
| 8 Kruſhquas,           | - - - | 1 Wedro, = 13 <i>Eng-<br/>liſh</i> quarts. |
| $1\frac{1}{2}$ Wedros, | - - - | 1 Stakan ( <i>u</i> ).                     |
| 2 Stakans,             | - - - | 1 Anchor.                                  |
| 6 Anchors,             | - - - | 1 Hogſhead.                                |

## W E I G H T S.

|              |       |                                                             |
|--------------|-------|-------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 Zalotnick, | - - - | = 2 d. wts. 17 grains<br>$\frac{1}{4}$ ths <i>Engliſh</i> . |
| 3 Dittos,    | - - - | 1 Lote.                                                     |
| 32 Lotes,    | - - - | 1 Pound.                                                    |
| 40 Pounds,   | - - - | 1 Pood, 36 lbs. do.                                         |
| 10 Poods,    | - - - | 1 Berquewitz.                                               |
| 63 Poods,    | - - - | 1 Tun do.                                                   |

But the *Engliſh* hundred generally comes neat to  $123\frac{1}{2}$  *Ruſſian* pounds.

Account of Mr. ILBRAND's journey  
from *Moscow* to *China* 1692\*.

*Taken from M.-le Bruyn's Travels.*

**H**E left *Moscow* in the month of *March*, on a ſledge, but had got but very little way on his journey, before it

(*u*) Stakan, in the common uſe of the word, ſignifies a glaſs.

\* Mr. *Ilbrand* was ſent at the head of a ſolemn embaffy from *Peter* the Great to the Emperor of *China*, to adjust ſome differences betwixt the two empires: for the ſucceſs of his negotiation, ſee Vol. I. Book II. p. 94.

it rained so hard, that he was exposed to very great danger, by the abundance of waters he met with in his road to *Wologda*, where he staid some days, to recover the fatigue he had gone through, and wait for fair weather. The frost coming on again, the ways were passable, and he pursued his journey towards *Suchina*, and from thence to the city of the great *Ustiga*, where the *Suchina* and the *Irga* uniting their streams form the famous river *Dwina*, which name means a double river.

He arrived next in the country of the *Syrenes*, whose inhabitants speak a language very different from the *Russian*, though somewhat like that which is spoke in *Livonia*, as he was informed by some of his train, who were of that country. They are of the *Greek* church, and subject to his Czarian majesty, to whom they pay the customary duties, but have neither Governor nor Woywode. They chuse their own judges, and if any question arises that they are unable to decide, they go to *Moscow*, where they have recourse to the Precause of *Pofolske*, or office for foreign affairs. They differ very little from the *Russians* in stature, and wear the same dress that was in use among them, till altered by the order of *Peter* the Great. They are very ignorant, and have no tradition among them concerning their

own history. They subsist chiefly by agriculture, except a part of them, upon the banks of the river *Zizol*, who have some grey furs to traffick with. They live very little in towns, but for the most part in little villages and hamlets, scattered up and down in the woods. The country is about seventy *German* leagues in length, and extends quite to *Kaigorod*, butting upon a great forest, where M. *Ilbrand* was a second time taken with a violent thaw, and heavy rain, that in one night's time, raised a flood of waters all round the wood, which retarded him four days without being able to go backwards or forwards. At length, with great difficulty, he got away, by throwing bridges over the rivers, and other helps; and came to *Kaigorod*, a pretty considerable fortress upon the *Kama*, on the 16th of *April*.

He would willingly have held on his way quite to *Solikamskoi*, the capital of the great *Permia*, that he might have gone by land to *Siberia*, over the mountains of *Wergotur*; but the thaw continuing, he found it impracticable; therefore it being just at the close of the winter season, he resolved to stay some days, till the *Kama* should become navigable; providing himself, in the mean time, with every thing necessary for the pursuit of his journey, as well as to defend himself against the free-booters in those parts,

parts, who had not long before pillaged even the city of *Kaigorod* itself.

On the 25th he arrived at *Solikamskoi*, which is a large and rich city, where are many considerable merchants, and very fine salt works. They make large quantities of salt here, which they send away in large vessels built for that purpose, in each of which they load a hundred and twenty thousand weight at a time.

On the 14th of *May*, he embarked at *Solikamskoi*, and crossing the little river *U-solkat*, half a league from this city, he entered the *Kama* again, and crossed that river from *Europe* to *Asia*, arriving in the country of the first *Tartars* of *Siberia*, called *Wogulski*, which is indifferently well peopled, and a most pleasant country all along the banks of the *Susawaia*, having on it all sorts of flowers and odoriferous herbs; with prodigious numbers of deer, and all sorts of game. As the *Tartars* of *Wogul* upon this river are heathens, he had the curiosity to go on shore to talk with them, concerning their belief and manner of life.

They are robust, with large heads; and their religion consists of no more than making an offering once a year. To this purpose they assemble in the woods, and there kill a beast of each kind; though their chief victims are horses, and a sort of goats.  
They

They slay them, and then hanging them upon a tree, fall down before them, which is their only worship. They eat the flesh together afterwards, and then return home. They are not able to give any manner of reason for their belief, or way of worship; but think it enough, that they received it from their fathers. Strange people, who say their prayers but once a year, and that to a dead horse!

Mr. *Ilbrand*, the *Muscovite* minister; asked them if they had any knowledge of a God, and if they did not believe there was a supreme Being in heaven, who created all things, and governs the world by his good providence, and who gives rain and fair weather? They answered, it was not unlikely, seeing the sun and moon which they worshipped, and the other stars, were placed in the firmament, and that there was doubtless a power that ruled them: but they would by no means agree, that there was a devil, because he had never made himself known to them: yet they do not deny the resurrection of the dead, but know nothing of what is to become of them. When any of them dies, the body is deposited in the ground, and covered with their most precious ornaments, whether the deceased be man or woman: they erect no monuments to the dead, but they put money

ney by them, in proportion to their circumstances when living, that they may want nothing necessary for them at the day of resurrection. They make great lamentations about the bodies of their dead; nor must any man marry a second wife, till he has buried his first a year. When they happen to have a dog die, that has been serviceable to them in hunting, or any other way; in honour of him they erect a little wooden hut, six feet high, upon four posts, where they place him, and let him remain as long as it lasts.

They may have as many wives as they can maintain; and when they want to marry, they buy their wives of their parents, and have scarce any ceremony at their weddings: they only invite their nearest relations to be present, and having entertained them, the new-married couple go to bed without any more to do. When the women draw near the time of their delivery, they retire into a wood, to a cabin prepared for them on purpose, where they ly in, and their husbands are not to go near them for two months.

They live in square wooden huts, after the manner of the *Russian* peasants; but use hearths instead of stoves, and burn wood. As soon as the wood is burnt to a coal, they cover the opening, where the smoke  
went

went out, with a piece of ice, and by that means retain all the heat in the room, without shutting out the light, which shines through the ice at top. They use no chairs, but have, instead of them, benches like taylor's shop-boards in *England*, upon which, like them too, they sit cross legged, and the same serve them for beds at night.

They subsist by hunting; their chief game is elks, which abound in this country. They shoot them with arrows, and dry their flesh, which they cut in slices or slips, and hang it up in the air in their houses; and when it has been thoroughly wet, and is quite putrified, they dry it a second time, and then account it delicious food. They have snares and traps to take the elks, as well as by shooting them. These *Tartars* live all along the river *Susowaiâ*, quite to the castle of *Utka*; and are under the protection of the Czar, to whom they pay an annual tribute.

Mr. *Ilbrand* having quitted the country of these heathens, arrived on the 1st of *June*, at the fortress of *Utka*, upon the frontiers of the *Tartars* of *Baskier* and *Ussimi*; and from thence proceeded to *Neujanfskoi*, than between which places a finer country is hardly to be seen, full of meadows, woods, lakes, well cultivated lands, abounding with every thing, and well peopled with *Russians*.

Upon

Upon the 21st of *June* he arrived at *Tu-meen*, which is also well peopled; three fourths of the inhabitants are Christians, and the rest *Mahometan Tartars*. . . When the envoy arrived here, he found the people in the town, and all the neighbourhood in a consternation, on account of the *Cossacks* and *Calmuks Tartars*, who had just then made an invasion into *Siberia*, where they had plundered several villages and killed the inhabitants, and now threatened this town, from whence they were not above fifteen *German* leagues distant. But the Governor sent for troops from *Tobol*, and some other places, with which he pursued, and killed a number of the *Tartars*. The *Muscovite* minister thought it not convenient to stay here, but embarked on the *Tobol* with a new set of rowers and a guard of soldiers.

Upon the 1st of *July*, he happily arrived at *Tobolsky*, a strong place, where is a large stone monastery with towers so high, that it might be well mistaken for a fortress. This city stands upon a hill at the conflux of the *Tobol* and the *Irtis*. The foot of the hill, and the shore of the *Irtis*, are inhabited by *Tartars*, and *Mahometan Bucharians*, who carry on a great trade with the *Calmuks* upon the river, and even go as far as *China*, by the lake *Jamaschowwa*. *Tobolsky* is the capital of *Siberia*, and its jurisdiction

reaches as far as *Barabu*, from *Wergotur* to the river *Oby*, to the eastward of the *Sa-moides*; to the northward quite to the country of the *Ostiacks*; and westward as far as *Ussa*, and the river *Susarwaia*.

Mr. *Ilbrand* having provided himself in every thing necessary, and particularly with a good guard, departed from *Tobolsky*, and fell down the *Irtis*, upon the shores of which are several villages, inhabited by *Tartars* and *Ostiacks*: he arrived at *Samoroskoi-jam*, where he changed his rowers, and raised masts in the larger vessels, to be able to set sail up the *Oby*, when the wind should be favourable, the *Irtis* falling into this river by several openings not far from *Samoroskoi-jam*.

The water of the *Irtis* is white and light, and comes from the mountains in the country of the *Calmuks*. This river runs from the south to the north-east, and passes through the two lakes of *Kebak* and *Susan*. To the south-east, it is bordered by lofty mountains, which are crowned with cedars, and the land on the other side, to the north-west, is low, and full of pasture grounds, where are great black bears, wolves, foxes, red and grey; and upon the banks of the river *Kasimka*, which discharges itself into the *Oby*, not far from *Samoroskoi-jam*,  
are

are the finest grey furs of all *Siberia*, excepting those in the woods of *Hetkoi Wollock*.

The inhabitants in this country are for the most part *Russians*, in the pay of his Czarian majesty, and are obliged to furnish the Woywodes sent hither, and all those who travel into *Siberia*; upon the Prince's business, with carriages and guides, as well to go by the water in summer as upon the ice in the winter, as far as the city of *Surgut*, upon the *Oby*, at reasonable rates. They keep a great number of dogs to draw their sledges in the winter, not being able to use horses, on account of the depth of the snow, which is sometimes a fathom deep upon the *Oby*.

Upon the 29th of *July* M. *Ilbrand* departed from *Samoroskoi-jam*, and with two vessels went down the principal branch of the *Irtis*, towards the *Oby*, where he arrived the next day; and upon the 6th of *August* came to *Surgut*, which stands upon the east side of this river. In these parts, up the country to the eastward, going up the *Oby*, from *Surgut*, quite to the city of *Narum*, are very fine fables, as well of a pale brown as black; also the finest ermins of all *Siberia*, and even of all *Russia*; and black foxes of unspeakable beauty; the finest of which are set apart for his Czarian ma-

jesty, and are sometimes valued at two or three hundred rubles a-piece: some of them exceed the choicest fables of *Dauria*.

Having been some time mounting the *Oby*, sometimes by the help of the sail, sometimes by the slow labour of the tow-line, M. *Ilbrand* crossed the mouth of the river *Wagga*, which falls down from the mountains of *Trugan*, and empties itself into the *Oby*, to the north-west, below *Narum*, a small city, where he arrived on the 24th of *August*. This city stands on the river side, in a fine country, and is defended by a citadel with a good garrison of *Cossacks*.

Descripti-  
on of the  
*Ostiacks*.

The banks of the *Oby* are inhabited by a people called *Ostiacks*, who worship idols; though at the same time, they acknowledge there is a God in heaven, but pay him no adoration. They have idols of wood, and idols of earth, in human form, which they fashion with their own hands, and which such of them as can afford it, clothe in silk, after the manner of *Russian* habits. These idols stand in their cabins, which are of the bark of trees, sewed together with the guts of deer, and have, on one side of them, bundles of hair, and a little bucket full of a sort broth of which they give them some every day, in a spoon made on purpose, and which always runs down the corners of their mouths, and makes them very nasty.

nasty, When they worship their idols, or pray to them, they stand upright, and make strong motions with the head, without bowing the body at all, and keep a noise like those who call dogs. They have neither temples nor priests.

The *Ostiacks* marry as many wives as they can maintain, and make no scruple to wed with their nearest relations. When one of them is jealous of his wife, he cuts off some hair from the belly of a bear, and carries it to the person he suspects to be guilty with her; if he is innocent, he accepts it, but when he is guilty, he fairly owns it, and comes to an amicable agreement with the husband for the price of his wife: nor dare they act otherways, persuaded that if a man should presume to accept the hair when he is guilty, the bear from whom it was cut, would devour him in three days time. When their friends and relations die, they lament about the body for some days, without ceasing, with their heads covered up, and on their knees, without seeing any body; and then they carry it to the grave upon poles. They are very poor, and in summer live in miserable huts; but they might easily better their condition, the country about the *Oby* affording plenty of furs, and the river being stored with fish, especially sturgeon, twenty of which of the largest

gest size, they will sell for about three-pennyworth of tobacco: but they are too lazy to work, and seek only for what may serve for a miserable subsistence in the winter.

They hardly eat any thing but fish when they travel, and especially when they are fishing. They are of a middling stature, with hair either fair or red, and broad flat faces and noses. They are not at all inclined to war, and know nothing of the use of arms; though they have both bows and arrows for hunting, but are not at all dexterous with them. They cover themselves with the skins of certain fish, and particularly with that of the sturgeon, and have no manner of linen. Their stockings and shoes are all of a piece, and over all they wear a short kind of loose waistcoat, to which is fastened a kind of cap, that they pull over their heads when it rains. Their shoes which are also of fish-skin, are not water-proof, so that they are always wet shod. They undergo all the rigours of a most dreadful cold upon the water, without any seeming pain, and clothed no other-ways than above-mentioned, except the winter prove very hard indeed, and then they put on two loose waistcoats: but when this happens, it is a kind of æra with them, and they will ask one another if they remember

member the winter when they wore two waistcoats? They wear but one when they hunt in the winter, and never cover their breasts, thinking they shall sufficiently heat themselves, with running up and down upon the snow, with their sledge shoes. When they happen to be overtaken with an extraordinary frost, that they are unable to withstand, they strip themselves as fast as they can, and bury themselves deep in the snow, that they may die the sooner, and with less pain. The women are dressed much after the same fashion with the men.

Their chief diversion is hunting the bear, upon which they go in companies, but no otherways armed than with a sort of sharp knife, made fast to the end of a staff, about six feet long. When they have killed a bear, they cut off his head, and hanging it up to a tree, they run about it, and seem to pay it great honours.

They have petty princes among them, one of which came on board to see *M. Ilbrand*. This man was appointed over some hundred cabins, and gathered the tribute these people are obliged to pay his Czarian majesty's woywodes. He came with all his train; brought him a present of fresh fish, and returned highly pleased with an exchange of brandy and tobacco. He came a second time, and invited *M. Ilbrand* to his

his palace, who, out of curiosity, accepting his invitation, and going thither, was received by the Prince himself, and conducted into his house, which was made of the barks of trees, like the other cabins, but not extremely well sewed together. The *Moscovite* minister here saw four of the Prince's wives, the youngest of which had on a red cloth petticoat, with a great deal of coral and glass about her neck and waist, as also the tresses of her hair, which hung down on each side, and upon her shoulders: she had great rings or buckles in her ears, from whence hung strings of coral beads. These ladies, each of them offered him a little tub made of bark, full of dried fish, and the youngest a tub of sturgeon, yellow as gold itself: he, in return, regaled them with brandy and tobacco, which are great delicacies with them. This cabin had no other furniture than some cradles and trunks made of bark, in which were their beds, full of wood-dust, as soft as down itself. The cradles were at the end of the cabin, full of naked children, and the fire was in the midst. There were no kitchen utensils, save one copper kettle, and some others of bark, which they can never use, but when there is no flame.

When these people smoke, to which both men and women are very much addicted, they

they take a mouthful of water, and swallow the smoke of the tobacco with it. This has such an effect upon them, that they fall down, and ly upon the ground for some time insensible, with their eyes open, and foaming at the mouth, like those in the falling sickness; some of them even die in this condition; sometimes they fall into the river, or into the fire, and there come to a miserable end; and sometimes they are suffocated to death with this smoke.

Their boats are made of the bark of trees, and the timber and frame-work within of very slight pieces of wood. They are two or three fathoms in length, and not above an ell broad; and yet they make a shift to live out in very bad weather. In winter these *Ostiacks* live under ground, with a hole at the top of their caves for the smoke to go out. When it snows whilst they sleep by the fire, and they find one half of their body covered with snow, when they awake, they turn themselves with that next to the fire, and feel no inconvenience by it.

M. *Ilbrand* now left the *Oby*, and arrived on the 1st of *September*, at the town of *Keetskoi*, on the *Keta*, which falls north-west into the *Oby*. On the 28th he came to *St. Sergius*; on the 3d of *October*, to the village of *Worozeikin*, and on the 7th

City of  
*Jenize-  
skoi.*

happily arrived at *Makoskoi*, after many inconveniencies on the *Keta*, and suffering greatly from the want of provisions. He resolved now to expose himself no longer to the perils of the water, but to perform the rest of his journey by land. Having travelled sixteen leagues, upon the 12th of *October*, he came to *Jenizeskoi*, where he staid some time, to repose himself, and to wait for the winter season being settled, that he might continue his journey in a sledge. In the mean time he made preparations for every thing he wanted, and had leisure enough to examine what was remarkable in the city. It takes its name from the river *Jenisia*, which arising from the south, crosses the *Kalmuc* mountains, and holds on almost in a strait line to the northward, till it disembogues itself into the icy sea of *Tartary*. The city of *Jenizeskoi* is indifferently large, well fortified, and well peopled. There is great plenty of corn, butcher's meat, and poultry. Its jurisdiction extends over a great number of the heathen *Tungutes*, who inhabit along the *Jenisia* and the *Tunguska*. They pay their tribute to the Czar in all sorts of furs. The cold is so intense here, that the trees bear no fruit.

The envoy departing from *Jenizeskoi*, arrived on the 20th of *January* 1693, at the island

island of *Ribnoi*, which stands in the middle of the river *Tunguska*, and abounds in fish, especially pike and sturgeon, of an extraordinary size. It is almost wholly inhabited by *Russians*. Upon the 25th he arrived at *Kinskoi*, upon the river *Ilni*, which rises to the south-south-west, and discharges itself into the *Tunguska*, north-north-west. At some days journey from hence, is the great <sup>Cataract</sup> cataract or fall of water of *Shaman,skoi*. <sup>of Sha-</sup> <sup>man,skoi.</sup> The fall of this torrent is half a league in extent; the sides are hills of rock, and all the bottom is rock: it is terrible to behold, and makes a most frightful noise as it falls among the rocks, some of which appear above water, and some are concealed under it. When the air is still it may be heard at the distance of three \* *German* leagues. The vessels wherewith they navigate up' this torrent, are often six or seven days in getting up, although they are quite light, and drawn up by capstons, windlasses, anchors, and men. Sometimes it happens that they work a whole day in places where the water is low, and the rocks are high, and do not gain the length of the vessel, which is all that time in great danger. They unlade their vessels to go down, as well as to go up the torrent, and carry the goods by land, till they have passed the danger. The

U u 2 fall

\* A *German* league is about five *English* miles.

fall is so precipitate, that they are seldom above twelve minutes in going down. There are but few of the *Russians* or the *Tunguses* who are quite dexterous at this navigation, tho' they are provided with a rudder both fore and aft, and tho' they have oars-shipped on each side. The steerfman directs the men at the oars with the motion of a handkerchief, the noise being so rude and boisterous, as to drown the sound of the voice; and besides this, they take care to have their vessel covered up, to prevent their shipping the water that goes over them. However, there happens every year some sad accident or other for want of skillful pilots, who run upon the rocks, in which case there is no resource, and they are either swallowed up by the furious torrent, or inevitably dashed to pieces against the rock: nor is it easy to recover the dead bodies of those so lost; tho' on the shore are many crosses erected at the places where such wrecks have happened, and where the people have been buried.

Upon the 1st of *February* the envoy arrived at the fortress of *Buratskoi*, upon the river *Angara*, which falls into the lake of *Baikal*, and is inhabited by a people that are heathens, called *Burates*.

Upon the 12th he arrived at *Bulagan-skoi*; where also the vales and low countries

tries are inhabited by the *Burates*, a people *Burates*. rich in cattle. Their cabins are low, made of wood, and covered with earth; they light their fire in the middle, and the smoke goes out of a hole on the top of the building. They have no notion of agriculture, or of fruit-grounds or gardens; and their villages are for the most part, on the sides of rivers, whence they are not used to remove like the *Tungutes*, and other of the heathens. On one side of their doors they have stakes planted in the ground, upon which they impale goats or sheep, and fasten thereto also the skins of horses.

In the spring they meet together in great numbers on horseback, to hunt the stag, the rein-deer, and other wild beasts, which they call *Ablavo*. When they have sight of them at a distance, they divide themselves into troops, and surround them; then they drive them together into a close body by degrees, and in this manner frequently hedge in some hundreds of them, which they shoot with their arrows when they are within reach; so that few of them escape, every sportsman being provided with thirty arrows. The country swarms with fallow-deer, and wild sheep, which upon the mountains are met with by thousands.

The people have no notion of money in coin; but if you want oxen or camels to travel,

travel with to *China*, they will truck with you for pale fables, pewter or copper basons, red cloths of *Hamburgh*, otter-skins, silks of *Persia* of all colours, and gold and silver in ingots. In this manner you may buy an ox, which dressed would weigh from eight hundred to a thousand pounds, for the value of four or five rubles; and a camel for the value of ten or a dozen. The inhabitants of this country, as well men as women, are robust and large of stature; have a face handsome enough in their way, and somewhat resembling the *Tartars* of *China*. In winter-time both the one and the other wear gowns of sheep-skins, with a great girdle, and a cap, called *Malachaven*, which comes over their ears; and in summer they wear gowns of an ugly sort of red cloth. They are never washed but upon the day that they come into the world; they never pare their nails, and have scarce the appearance of human creatures.

The men wear a beard under their chin, but pluck out all the rest; the seams of their clothes are adorned with furs; their caps are of fox-skins; their gowns of a blue cotton stuff, platted in the middle, and their boots are of skins with their hair outermost. The women wear coral-rings, and pieces of money in the tresses of their hair; and the hair

hair of the girls or maidens is in snakes, that they look like furies.

The other women have their hair falling down on each side, and adorned with all sorts of figures in pewter: when they die, they bury them with their best clothes, and a bow and arrows.

Their only worship is to make certain motions of the head, at particular times of the year, to the goats and sheep that are impaled at their doors. They pay the same honour to the sun and moon, but upon their knees, without saying a word, or using any sort of verbal invocation. They have priests, whom they put to death whenever they please, and then bury them with money and clothes, that they may go before and pray for them.

When they are under a necessity of taking an oath among themselves, they repair to the lake of *Baikal*, upon a high mountain, which is sacred with them, and which they can reach in two days journey: they are persuaded that they should never come down again alive, if they take a false oath. This mountain has for a great number of years been in high veneration with them, and they make frequent offerings of cattle thereon.

The envoy, *M. Ilbrand*, having made some stay among these people, went to *Jekutskoi*,

*kutskoi*, upon the river *Angara*, which rises from the lake of *Baikal*, about eight leagues off. This town is flanked with good towers; its suburbs are very large, and corn, salt, butcher's meat, and fish, are so cheap there, that they do not give above seven pence for an hundred weight of barley. The country about is very fertile, and abounds in grain as far as *Wergolenskoi*, which is only some leagues distant. The *Russians* in these parts have some hundred villages, and are very careful to cultivate the land.

M. *Ilbrand* having rested himself some time at *Jekutskoi*, departed, on the first of *May*, in a sledge, and crossed the country to the lake of *Baikal*, where he arrived upon the 10th, and found it still frozen over. This lake is about six *German* leagues in breadth, and forty in length, and the ice upon it two *Dutch* ell\$ in thickness.

The only river that goes out of this lake is the *Angara*, which runs to the north-north-west; but there are several that fall into it, the chief of which is the *Silinga*, which rises to the southward in the country of the *Mongales*; besides some brooks and rills that fall into it from the rocks; nor is it without some islands. Its borders and the country about, are inhabited by *Burates*, *Mongales*, and *Onkotes*, and produce very  
fine

fine black fables; besides that, they here take a creature called *Kaberdiner*.

Upon the 14th of *May*, he arrived at the castle of *Tanzinskoi*, where was a good garrison of *Cossacks* to make head against the incursions of the *Mongales*, who inhabit upon the frontiers of that country. Upon the 19th he arrived at *Udinskoi*, a town seated upon a hill, upon the foot of which, most of the inhabitants take up their abode, under the cannon of that fortress, along the river *Uda*, which falls into the *Kilinga*, a quarter of a league below the town; in which there is also a good garrison of *Russian Cossacks* to watch the motion of the *Mongales*.

This town, which is the key of the province of *Dauria*, is very much exposed, even in the summer time, to the ravages of the *Mongales*, who often carry off horses as they feed in the meadows. The land which is very mountainous, is fit for no sort of tillage, tho' it abounds in cabbages, carrots, turnips, and such-like vegetable productions; but no trees have as yet been planted there.

The envoy was forced to stay here some time for camels and horses; then went by land to the river *Ona*, which comes from the north-north-west, and falls into the *Uda*.

Upon the 29th, he arrived at *Jarauna*, and was ravished to meet with towns again, after having crossed a desert country full of high rocks; an irksome journey, during which he saw no soul from the time he left *Udinskoi*. This fortress is provided with a good garrison of *Cossacks*; and here also are many *Russians*, who subsist by the sale of fables. The *Konni Tungusi*, the heathens who inhabit along the river *Tunguski* and *Angara*, spread all over this country, and speak a language peculiar to themselves. When they die they are buried with their clothes, and their arrows, and stones are put over their graves; then they plant a stake, to which the best horse of the deceased is tied, and there sacrificed. They live by the sale of sable furs, which are perfectly fine in this country, and of an admirable black. Here also are fine luxes, and a sort of squirrels of a black grey, which the *Chinese* were formerly wont to carry off with them. To the north of this fortress are three small lakes, not far from each other, which together, are two leagues in circumference, and abound with pike, carp, perch, and the like. From hence are two ways, which lead to *Zitinskoi* or *Plabitscha*. The envoy sent part of his servants by one of them, and took the other himself, with a train of fourteen followers, to *Telimta*, in which

which fortrefs are numbers of *Russians*, who, in the winter-season, take fables, equal to the very finest in *Siberia*, or the province of *Dauria*.

Here he passed a night; and a *Knez*, or Prince of the *Tunguses*, called *Liliulka*, came to see him. This Lord had his hair done up with leather, and so very long that it went three times round about his shoulders; and when let loose, measured four *Dutch* ells in length. He had a son with him but of six years old, whose hair, which hung on his shoulders, was an ell in length. These *Tunguses* live in great numbers upon the hills and mountains of this country, and are generally rich, which proceeds from their large dealings in fables.

For two days together they went over stony mountains, very lofty, to the north-west and south-east. The river *Konela*, which afterwards assumes the name of *Wittim*, rises there to the northward; runs away to the north-east, and falls into the *Lena*, and from thence into the icy or northern sea. The *Zitta* commences from the other side of the mountains, half a league from thence, and falls into the *Ingodda*, or *Amur*, and from thence into the eastern ocean.

Upon the 15th of *June*, M. *Ilbrand* arrived at *Plodbitscha*, as the caravan with his

servants did the day before, having suffered greatly in the way from the *Tunguses*, who had set fire to the dry grass; so that the cattle being in want of forage, they had been obliged to go into the mountains for it at the distance of a league.

He was forced to stay some days at *Plod-bitfcha*, upon the *Zitta*, to rest him a little, and to get ready some rafts, by which he was to fall down the rivers *Ingodda* and *Schilka* to *Nerzinskoi*; for the waters were so low, that there was no such thing as going in boats, nor was it quite safe to go upon rafts in the rocky places, where two of them were broke: they were laden with part of the envoy's equipage; but with some trouble it was all saved.

When every thing was ready, he sent his camels and other beasts of burthen before him, towards *Nerzinskoi*, by the way of the mountains, and following them himself, reached the river *Onon* upon the 19th. This river rises from the fens of *Mongal*, and to the north-east throws itself into the *Ingodda*, where having united their streams, they go away together by the name of *Schilka*. Their waters are very white, and their borders are inhabited by several hoards of the *Mongales*, who commit frequent ravages on the other side of the *Schilka*, quite to *Nerzinskoi*. But they are not always attended

attended with the best luck upon these occasions; they are not seldom repulsed, and when any of them happen to be taken, they are sure to be executed as common robbers. The *Russian Cossacks* also scour the country all along the *Onon*, to take vengeance on them, and spare not one that comes in their way.

Upon the 20th, he happily arrived at *Nerzinskoi*, a town upon the *Nerza*, which comes from the north-north-east, and discharges itself into the *Schilka*, a quarter of a league from this fortress, whose works are not bad, and provided with a great number of brass artillery, as well as with a good garrison of *Daurian Cossacks*, who serve both on foot and on horseback. This place though surrounded with high hills, does not want for grass grounds to feed its camels, horses and other cattle. And here and there upon the hills, are patches of land fit for tillage, grazing, and fishing. The places about this town and hill produce all sorts of flowers and plants; bastard rhubarb, or *Rapontica*, of extraordinary size; fine white and yellow lillies; red and white pionies of a charming scent, and of several sorts; rosemary, thyme, sweet marjoram, lavender, besides many odoriferous plants unknown in *Europe*; but they have no sort of fruit here except gooseberries. The  
heathens,

heathens, who have a long time been in this country, and who are under the dominion of the Czar of *Moscovy*, are of two sorts; the *Konni Tungusi*, and the *Olenni Tungusi*. The first are obliged to appear on horseback at the first orders of the Woywode, or Governor of *Nerzinskoi*, or when the borders are infested by the *Tartars*; and the *Olenni* are obliged to serve on foot, and armed in the town when occasion requires. The chief of the *Konni Tungusi*, when M. *Ilbrand* was there, was a *Knez* called *Paul Petrowitz Gantimur*, or in their language, *Cantana Gantimur*. He was pretty far advanced in years, and of the country of *Nieuheu*, where he had been a *Taischa*, under the dominion of the King of *China*; but falling into disgrace with that Prince, who deposed him, he removed into *Dauria*, with his hoards or vassals, and embracing the Christian faith of the *Greek* church, threw himself under the protection of the Czar. This Prince could bring three thousand men into the field in twenty-four hours time, all well mounted, and good soldiers, provided with bows and arrows. It often happens that a score or two of this people shall drive three or four hundred of the *Mongal Tartars* before them.

Their worship is the same with that of the inhabitants of *Dauria*, from whom they pretend

pretend to be descended, and differ in no point from that of *Tartary*, quite to the frontiers of the *Mongales*. The women are here robust, with broad faces, like the men; are, when they are on horseback, armed like them with bow and arrow, which they use with great dexterity, even when young maidens: nor does their dress differ from that of the men. Water is their common drink; but those who have wherewithal drink tea, which they call *Kara'tza*, or *black-tea*, because it tinctures the water with black instead of green. They boil it in mares milk, and a little water, to which they add some grease or butter. They have also a kind of distilled liquor, which they call *Kunen* or *Arak*, extracted from mares milk, they stir it every hour for one night, and then having put it in an earthen-pot well covered, and luted with paste, distill it over a fire. This is to be twice repeated before the liquor is fit to drink, and then it becomes as strong and clear as a malt spirit, and fuddles as easily.

These heathens hunt in the spring time, and lay in their store of venison after the manner of the *Burates*, drying it as they do in the sun. Their bread they make of the dried roots of yellow lillies, which they call *Sarana*, and which they apply to several other uses. They are very adroit at shooting fish  
in

in the water with their arrows, though at the distance of fifteen or sixteen fathoms.

When these people are under a necessity to take an oath to purge themselves of any crime, they open the vein of a dog on the left side, from whence the person that would clear himself sucks the blood, till the creature falls down dead by the emptying of the blood vessels. The envoy saw an example of this at *Nerzinskoi*, where one of the *Tungutes* had accused another of having bewitched some of his companions, who were dead by his practices upon them; but the party accused acquitted himself by submitting to the fore-mentioned trial, and his accuser was punished in his stead.

Upon the 3d of *August*, M. *Ilbrand* arrived at *Argunskoi*, the last fortress belonging to their Czarian majesties on that side. It stands upon the river *Argun*; which rising to the south-eastward, falls into the *Amur*, and serves for a common boundary between the dominions of *Moscovy*, and those of the King of *China*.

*END of the Second VOLUME.*

# I N D E X.

[N. B. The numerals (I. II.) refer to the *Volumé*,  
and the figures to the *Page*.]

## A

**A**LEXANDER, Czar, builds the city of *Moscow* I. 13

*Alexis*, Czar, succeeds *Michael Theodorowich* I. 56. Great disorders in his minority *ib.* Bannishes the *English* merchants from an abhorrence of *Oliver Cromwel's* rebellion 61. A new impostor rises up in his reign, who is taken and beheaded 62. Takes *Smolenskō*, *Kiow* and *Cherniskow*, from the *Poles* *ib.* The *Cossacks* come under his protection 63. His marriage and issue *ib.* By his Empress *Natalia Karilowna*, has the Emperor *Peter* the Great 64. Gets a fifth impostor delivered up to him 65. Undertakes the defence of *Poland* 66—Dies *ib.*

*Alexis*, Czarowich, son of *Peter* the Great born I. 92. Is married to a Princess of *Wolfenbuttle* 143. Has a daughter born II. 62. His son Prince *Peter* born 71. His wife dies *ib.* Makes an elopement from *St. Petersburg* 91. Is made prisoner on his return to *Moscow* 102. See the whole procedure against him, from 96 to 143. His death *ib.* His accomplices punished 144. His character 286

VOL. II.

*Allart*, General, has the direction of the siege of *Narva* I. 146

*Altena* burnt II. 48

*Anne*, Queen of *England*, writes to Czar *Peter* excusing the harsh treatment his Ambassador had met with I. 288. Makes a law in favour of foreign ministers *ib.*

*Anna*, niece to *Peter* the Great, is married to the Duke of *Courland* I. 143

*Archangel*, a fort built there by *Peter* the Great I. 94. Great loss by a storm and fire at it 103

*Asoph*, description of I. 97. Is besieged by *Peter* the Great 99. The garrison repulses the *Russians* at two attacks 102. The siege raised *ib.* Is again besieged 105. Surrenders 109

*Astracan*, a revolt there I. 211. The rebels cut the throats of all foreigners 259. Is thought to be fomented by the *Strelitzes*, *ib.* The ringleaders punished *ib.*

*Areskin*, Dr. the Czar's physician dies II. 170. His character 171

*Appraxin*, High-admiral, besieges *Wiburgh* I. 233; which he is obliged to raise *ib.* Besieges *Wiburgh* again II. 17. Causes arrest the garrison after they had surrendered and marched out *ib.*

Y

Beats

# I N D E X.

**Beats the Swedes at Allandt** 58. Commands in the descent on *Sweden*, and does vast mischief 162. Is found guilty of maladministration, and fined 174. Some account of his life and character 284.

**Ambassador from the Ottoman Porte**, makes his publick entry into *Moscow* I. 193. Goes to *Narva* with the Czar 194. His saying there to Prince *Menze-koff* 195. Takes his audience of leave *ib.*

**Ankersteern**, Admiral, goes to attack the *Russian* fleet I. 197. Is forced to retire with loss *ib.* Makes another unsuccessful attempt on *Cronstat* 205.

**Augustus**, King of *Poland*, takes possession of *Radziwelof* and *Birzen* I. 162. Meets with Czar *Peter* *ib.* Undertakes to furnish the Czar with troops 163. Is defeated at *Cletchoff* by the King of *Sweden* 168. Endeavours to procure a peace 173. Sends the Countess of *Koningsmark* to the King of *Sweden* *ib.* Is dethroned by the confederacy of *Warsaw* 195. Leaves *Dresden* incog. 207. Goes to *Grodno* 208. Meets with the Czar *ib.* Institutes the order of the white eagle, which he confers on some of the *Russian* generals *ib.* He, together with Marshal *Ogilvie*, gets the command of the army at *Grodno* 211. Orders all the troops in the neighbouring towns to march to *Grodno* 212. Entrenches himself strongly *ib.* Marches into *Poland* 218. Gives

up all hopes of success 222. Causes arrest *Patcul* 223. Is averse to engage the *Swedish* army 226. Sends private intelligence to General *Marderfelt* 227. Commands at the battle of *Calish*, where the *Swedes* are defeated *ib.* Makes a dishonourable peace with the King of *Sweden* at *Altranstadt* 230. His condition not bettered by it 231. His letter to King *Stanislaus* *ib.* Publishes a declaration after the battle of *Pultawa* II. 1. Returns to *Poland* to take possession of the crown 2. Meets with the Czar at *Thorn* 3. Is in great difficulties 72.

## B

Baths much used in *Russia* I. 7

Bagnios, women in *Russia* brought to bed in them *ib.*

**Basil**, Emperor of *Constantinople*, sends bishops to the *Russians* I. 10

**Basil**, Czar of *Russia*, retakes the towns seized from his father I. 14

**Basil** II. succeeds *Gregory* *ib.* His eyes put out 15

**Basil** III. succeeds *John* I. 15. Conquers the kingdom of *Casan* 16. Is attacked by the Cham of *Tartary*, and defeated 17. Retires to *Novogrod* 18. Concludes a shameful peace *ib.* Gets the title of Emperor from *Maximilian* I. Emp. of *Rome* 20

**Berkley**, an *English* gentleman, sent to the isle of *Allandt* with letters from Lord *Carteret* to General *Bruce* II. 164

*Bestucheff*,

# I N D E X.

*Bestucheff*, the Czar's minister, ordered to leave the court of *Britain* II. 186

*Boras Gadenow*, poisons Czar *Theodore* I. 37. Retires into a convent 38. Accepts of the crown *ib.* Endeavours to have *Demetrius* delivered up 41. His dismal state 42. At first successful against *Demetrius* 43. Totally overthrown *ib.* His death *ib.*

*Bower*, General, makes his escape from *Narva* I. 145. Surprizes *Mittau* 198. Crosses the *Boristhenes* in pursuit of the King of *Sweden* 305. Comes up to the river *Bog* just after the King had passed it *ib.* Takes some hundreds of his company prisoners *ib.* Returns to *Pultawa* 306. Attacks and beats General *Steinbock* II. 49

*Belawin*, Colonel, his sedition and death I. 266

*Brandenburgh*, elector of, sends *Peter* the Great engineers, &c. I. 105. Receives the Czar at *Koningsberg* with great state 113

*Bremen* and *Verden* given up to *Hanover* for the payment of a million of crowns, and a yearly subsidy of 300,000 crowns to *Sweden* II. 158

*Britain*, court of, jealous of the *Russians* and *Swedes*, sends persons to pry into their conduct II. 153

*Bruce*, General, his answer to Lord *Carteret's* letter II. 165. Is sent one of the Czar's plenipotentiaries to the treaty of *Nieftadt* 200

## C

*Casan* is conquered by *Basil* III. I. 16. The inhabitants beg assistance from the Cham of *Tartary* *ib.*

*Catharine*, niece to *Peter* the Great is married to the Duke of *Mechlenburgh* I. 143

*Calish*, battle of, I. 227. The *Swedes* are defeated 228. List of the killed, wounded and prisoners *ib.*

*Cantamir*, Hospodar of *Wallachia*, flies into *Russia* II. 33

*Cajanberg* surrenders to Prince *Gälitzen* II. 74

*Chambers*, Major-general, installed knight of St. *Andrew* I. 192

Cham of the *Usbeck*, *Tartars* becomes the Czar's vassal II. 61

*Chitsfoy*, the Czar's ambassador at the *Porte* confined in the seven towers II. 22

Cross, kissing it, the usual way of tendering an oath in *Russia* I. 71

*Croy*, Duke of, has the direction of one of the attacks at the siege of *Narva* I. 148. Gets the command of the army in the Czar's absence 149. Gives himself up prisoner of war to the King of *Sweden* 150. His advice before the *Swedes* came up 154

*Cronstat* built I. 171. The manner the foundations were laid *ib.* Number of horses and men destroyed in carrying materials for it *ib.* Description of the harbour, &c. II. 296

*Cracow*, description of the salt mines there II. 10

Crown general of *Poland*, leaves the

# I N D E X.

- the confederacy of *Warsaw* and joins that of *Sandomir* I. 196. Arrives at *Grodno* with several other senators 209. Commands the *Polish* troops at *Calish* 227. Presents a letter from Czar *Peter* to the council at *Limberg* 238. Thunders out universals against *Stanislaus's* adherents 264. Raises contributions on friend and foe *ib.*

*Courland*, the plague rages there II. 21

Custom, a barbarous one in *Russia* I. 91

*Czarina, Catharine*, very instrumental in bringing about the peace with the *Turks* at the *Pruth* II. 33. Brought to bed of a Princefs at *Riga* 51; of another at *St. Petersburg* 59; of a Prince 81. Goes to *Holland* to the Czar 82. Is crowned Empress 257. Some account of her life *ib.* Is appointed the Czar's successor in the empire 261

## D

*Daniel*, Czar, builds the citadel of *Moscow* I. 13

*Dantzick* declares for *Stanislaus* I. 246. Prepares to oppose General *Renn* 247

*Demetrius*, Czar, has wars with the *Tartars* I. 13

*Demetrius*, Prince, murdered by his father *John Basilwick* II. I. 34. Is persecuted by *Griška Utropeca* 39. Again persecuted by another impostor 49. Persecuted by a third impostor 56

*Derpt* besieged I. 180. The com-

mandant, Col. *Skyte*, causes set the suburbs on fire 181. Journal of the siege 183. Surrenders 186. The fortifications demolished 264

Divan, consults about the King of *Sweden's* affairs II. 24

*Dolgoruky*, Prince *James*, forces the *Turks* to retire I. 131. His message to General *Weid* at *Narva* 152. Is tried and found guilty of mal-administrations II. 174. Fined 175.

*Dolgoruky*, Prince *Gregory*, is sent minister from the Czar to the council at *Limberg* I. 237. Prevails on the *Poles* to hold a congress at *Lublin* II. 81. It meets, but is transported to *Warsaw*; when they conclude a peace under the guarantee of the Czar *ib.* Receives a letter from Sir *John Norris* 187. His answer 188

## E

*Elbing* taken by surprize II. 9

Emperor of *Russia*, an absolute Prince I. 4. 7. Has a monopoly of all the rich furs *ib.* The usual manner of his chusing a wife 69. The indolent manner the Czars used to live in 83. Has several large estates in *Russia* 173. His great revenues from the breweries, which have the sole privilege of vending malt liquors and spirits 260

Emperor of *Germany*, — affixes *Peter* the Great with engineers, &c. I. 105. Gives him an extraordinary entertainment at *Vienna* 119

*Eudoxia*

# I N D E X.

*Eudoxia Theodorowna Lapachin* is married to *Peter* the Great I. 89. Offends the Czar by her remonstrances 135. Is put into a convent 136. Her life and character II. 280.

## G

*Galitzen, Basil*, at the head of affairs during Czar *Peter's* non-age I. 86. Takes the field against the *Turks* *ib.* Is forced to retreat 87. Throws the blame on *Ivan Samuelowich*, whom he banishes, and beheads his son *ib.* Attacks the *Turks* a second time without success 89. Forms a design of cutting off Czar *Peter* *ib.* Throws himself at the Czar's feet, and pretends innocence 91. Is banished *ib.*

*Galitzen*, Prince, enters a protestation against King *Augustus* for seizing General *Patcul* I. 223. Defeats six regiments of *Swedes* at *Czarnapatta* 271. Is sent to *Poland* 289. Is recalled to his command of the guards 291. Is dispatched in pursuit of the *Swedes* at *Pultawa* 302. Attacks and beats *Arnfeldt* II. 56. Surprises *Ulla* 70. Beats the *Swedish* fleet 191. Commits great depredations in *Lapland* 192. Made Hettman or General of the *Ukraine Cossacks* 254. Some account of him 285

*Gerisslaus*, Czar, gets the better of all his brethren I. 11

*Gerisslaus* II. succeeds his brother *George* I. 12

*George* I. King of *Great Britain*, his answer to the Czar's memo-

rial as elector of *Hanover* II. 167. His answer as King of *Britain* 169. His mediation betwixt *Peter* the Great and *Sweden* rejected 189

*Gordon*, General *Patrick*, made Governor of *Shegreen* I. 66. Ill assisted by Prince *Romodanofsky* 67. Makes his way through the enemy in an extraordinary manner *ib.* His conduct much approved of *ib.* Assists General *Lefort* at the siege of *Asoph* 100. His advice not regarded 101. Proposes a new way to carry on the attacks, which is successful 107. Marches to the relief of *Tavan* 115. Returns to *Moscow* 116. Is the chief means of preserving the government from being overturned 123. Marches against the *Strelitzes* *ib.* Advises them as a friend 124. At last uses force and overpowers them 128. His death 137. His character *ib.*

*Gordon*, General *Alexander*, commands a party of *Cossacks* at *Asoph* I. 115. Is at pains to train his men 140. Gets a thousand more added to his regiment *ib.* Gets orders to march to *Novogrod* 144. Is at the siege of *Narva* under Prince *Irubezskoy's* command *ib.* Crosses the river with a detachment, and posts himself within cannon shot of the town 145. A party from the garrison attack him *ib.* Advises to build a fort at *Pibagie* 147. Is relieved from his long confinement in *Sweden* 257. Attends on the Czar to *St. Petersburg*

# I N D E X.

- Petersburgh* *ib.* The Czar's conversation with him 258. Forces Prince *Wiesnowitsky* to retire from place to place 264. Is made Major-general *ib.* Is ordered to oppose the King of Sweden's crossing the *Disna* 278. Comes up with the *Swedes* *ib.* Being ill supported, makes a good retreat 279. Is sent to *Poland* to oppose *Stanislaus* 289. Has the command of the infantry 291. Is ordered to the frontiers of *Hungary* II. 8. Reduces Prince *Lubomirsky*, &c. *ib.* Is ordered into *Royal Prussia* 16
- Gordon*, Count *James*, wounded at the siege of *Notteburgh* I. 169. Receives a thousand rubles as a gratification from Czar *Peter* *ib.*
- Golowin*, General, commands one of the divisions at the siege of *Asoph* I. 100
- Goltz*, General, marches with a detachment against *Stanislaus* 289. Defeats the *Poles* 290. Pursues them into *Great Poland* 291. On their dispersing he marches back into *Black Russia* 311. Is arrested by the Czar's orders II. 10. Carried prisoner to *St. Petersburg* and tried by a court-martial 11. Is acquitted *ib.* *Menzekoff* moves to have him tried a second time *ib.* The Czar presents him with a sword, and orders him to return to his command 12. He excuses himself and quits the service *ib.*
- Gemaurthoff*, battle of, I. 199. List of the killed and wounded 201
- Gortz*, Baron, enters into a private treaty with the Czar II. 68. Is arrested in *Holland* at the desire of the *British* court, for carrying on an intrigue in favour of the Chevalier de *St. George* 83. Confers with the Czar on the state of affairs 147. Is at great pains to bring about a peace 149. Plan betwixt him and Baron *Osterman* 150. Is beheaded 155
- Griska Utropeca* pretends to be Prince *Demetrius* I. 39. An account of him *ib.* His account of himself 40. Is credited and treated with great respect in *Poland* 41. Marries the Woywode of *Sandomir*'s daughter 42. Marches into *Russia* *ib.* Overcomes *Boras Gadenow* 43. Is generally acknowledged *ib.* Marches to the capital, where he is crowned Emperor 44. Takes his supposed mother out of the convent 45. Goes into impolitical measures *ib.* Removes his *Polish* guards 46. Is murdered 48. His wife *Maria Anne* is intercepted by a second false *Demetrius* 51
- Grand Seignior, refuses to deliver up the King of *Sweden* to Czar *Peter* I. 306. Threatens to renew the war with *Russia* II. 36. New articles agreed to betwixt him and the Czar 37. Orders the *Bassa* of *Bender* to convey the King of *Sweden* through *Poland* 40. Declares war against *Russia* 46. Deposes the prime Visier, and imprisons the *Russian* Ambassador *ib.* Wants the King of *Sweden* to leave *Turky* and

# I N D E X.

attack the Czar on another quarter 47; which he refusing, he takes rough methods with him *ib.* Makes peace with *Russia* 48

*Grodno*, Czar *Peter* goes thither I. 207; also King *Augustus* 208. A council of *Polish* senators meet there *ib.* The Crown-general with several more senators arrive 209. The subject of their conferences *ib.* Their issue and the alliance betwixt the Czar and the *Poles* 210. The King of *Sweden* forces the bridge 261

*Gyllemborg*, Count, arrested for carrying on an intrigue in favour of the Chevalier de St. George II. 83

## H

*Hanover*, elector of, gets *Bremen* and *Verden* delivered up to him II. 68

*Heyn*, General, quarrels with Pr. *Menzekoff*, and is sent to *Siberia* II. 12

*Holland*, states of, send *Peter* the Great gunners, &c. I. 105. Use their endeavours to incline the Czar to make peace with *Sweden* 161

*Horn*, Colonel, taken prisoner at *Stagrilitz* I. 167. Is killed at *Gemaurothoff* 201

*Horn*, Baron, Governor of *Narva*, sends for succours to General *Slepinback* I. 181. His insolent answer to Marshal *Ogilvie's* summons 188. Does all in his power to repair the breaches *ib.* Hides himself in a vault under

ground 190. Is punished for his cruelty 191. His daughters taken care of by the Czar *ib.*

*Holstein*, Duke of, killed at the battle of *Cletchoff* I. 168.

*Holowsin*, battle of, I. 268. List of the killed and wounded *ib.*

## I

*James I.* of *England*, mediates a treaty betwixt the *Russians* and *Swedens* I. 54

*Javaska*, a *German* engineer, his treachery I. 100. Is broke on the wheel 110

*Igor*, second sovereign of *Russia* I. 9. Is killed *ib.* His death revenged by Queen *Ogla* *ib.*

*John Basiliwick I.* enlarges the dominions of *Russia* I. 15. Builds *Ivanograd* *ib.*

*John Basiliwick II.* succeeds *Basil III.* I. 20. Introduces foreign discipline into his army 21. Besieges and takes *Casan* *ib.* Conquers the kingdom of *Astracan* 22. Besieges *Wiburgh* without success 23. Takes *Narva*, *Nyen*, *Hayson* and *Derpt* *ib.* also *Selin* and *Polocz* 24. A conspiracy formed against him, which he cruelly punishes 25. His army routed in *Poland* 26. Overcomes the *Turks* *ib.* His cruelties to the *Swedens* *ib.* The King of *Poland* successful against him 28. Proposes to acknowledge the Pope's supremacy 30. Kills his son 31. His excessive grief on that account *ib.* Makes peace with King *Stephen* 32. His death and character *ib.* His behaviour to the clergy 35. Was

# I N D E X.

Was contemporary with Queen Elizabeth *ib.* Nails the French ambassador's hat to his head 36  
*John*, eldest son of *Alexis*, not capable to govern alone I. 71.  
 Marries I. 84. His death and issue 104

*John* and *Peter* proclaimed Czars I. 71. Are crowned, and send ambassadors to Sweden, &c. 84. Conclude peace with Germany and Sweden I. 85. Send an army to the frontiers of Poland *ib.* Send ambassadors to France and Spain *ib.*

*Jeffries*, Mr., resident from the British court at St. Petersburg II. 153. Receives orders from his court to leave St. Petersburg 165

*Ulbrand*, Mr., sent at the head of an embassy from Czar Peter to the Emperor of China I. 94. Arrives at the capital of China, and settles all matters in dispute betwixt the two empires *ib.* A particular account of his journey and the places he passed thro' II. 322

*Ingria* falls into the hands of Sweden I. 54

*Irubetkoy*, Prince *John*, invests *Narva* I. 144. Completes the lines of circumvallation and contravallation 146

*Ivanogrod* invested I. 147. Summoned by Marshal *Ogilvie* 192. Surrenders 193. Articles of capitulation *ib.*

## K

*Kexholm* surrenders to Czar Peter II. 20

*Koningfmerk*, Countess of, goes to the King of Sweden's camp I. 173. Her saying on that occasion 174

## L

*Lefort*, General, commands one of the divisions at the siege of *Asoph* I. 100. Is assisted by General *Patrick Gordon* *ib.* Gets the command of the fleet 105. His death 133. His character, &c. 134. Was thought to be an instrument in alienating the Czar's affection from his Empress 135

*Levenhaupt*, Count, is taken prisoner at *Stagrilitz* I. 167. Beats the Russians in *Courland* 195. Obliges Marshal *Sheremetoff* to retire at *Gemaurthoff* 201. but retires the night after to *Riga* for fear of a second attack 202. Marches to join the King of Sweden at *Mohelow* 270. Passes the *Boristhenes* 273. Is attacked by the Czar 275. Marches off in the night leaving his ammunition, provisions, &c. behind 276. Joins the King of Sweden with the remains of his army 277. Surrenders to Prince *Menzekoff* 303. Articles of his surrender 304.

*Lefcher*, Commodore, his desperate action I. 180.

*Limberg*, Council of Polish senators there assembled, declare the throne vacant I. 237. Appoint a dyet to be held at *Lublin* 238. Their declaration to the Czar 242.

*Lublin*, dyet of, their proceedings

# I N D E X.

ings I. 252. Different views among the members 255

## M

*Marderfelt*, General, has no regard to King *Augustus's* intelligence I. 227. Is defeated at *Calish* 228. Is released on his parole 229

*Markborough*, Duke of, is sent by the Queen of *Great Britain* to induce the King of *Sweden* to leave *Germany* I. 247. Seeing him intent to be revenged of the Czar, he leaves him without making any proposal 248

*Mansfield*, Brigadier, commands a detachment at the bridge of *Grodno* I. 261. Retires before the King of *Sweden* *ib.* Is put under arrest 262. Makes his escape, and deserts to the enemy *ib.*

*Matucoff*, Mr., the Czar's ambassador at *London*, is arrested for a small debt I. 287. Is bailed by the *Portuguese* minister *ib.* Insists for satisfaction 288

*Mazepa*, *John*, is made Hettman of the *Ukraine* I. 87. Commands with Marshal *Sheremetoff* against the *Turks* 103. Has the command of 60,000 *Cossacks* in *Black Russia* 203. Loses the best opportunity of joining the King of *Sweden* 203. Presses the King of *Sweden* to march to the *Ukraine* 273. Joins the King of *Sweden* 280. Account of his life and character *ib.* Most of his troops leave him and repair to the Czar 285.

*Menzekoff*, *Alexander*, is for con-  
VOL. II.

tinuing the *Russian* custom of making attacks in the night-time I 188. Made Governor of *Ingria*, and installed knight of St. *Andrew* 192. Made a Prince of the *Roman* empire 222. Joins King *Augustus* with a detachment at *Peterkaw* 226. Commands the right of the *Russians* at *Calish* 227. Advises King *Augustus* to march into *Saxony* and attack the King of *Sweden* 229. Attacks *Baturin*, the residence of *Mazepa* 285. Pillages and burns the town *ib.* Marches in pursuit of the *Swedes* at *Pultawa* 302. General *Levenhaupt* surrenders to him 303. Makes himself master of *Rugen* II. 54. Levies a large sum at *Hamburg* *ib.* Tried and found guilty of mal-administration 174. Is fined 175. His life and character 274

*Mechlenburgh*, Duke of, marries the Princess *Catharine*, daughter to Czar *John*, and niece to *Peter* the Great II. 73. Great disorders occasioned by a misunderstanding between the Duke and the nobility 154. The Emperor of *Germany* sends persons to examine into these differences, but the Duke applies to the Czar, who sends troops to support him 155

*Michael Theodorowich Romanow* elected Czar I 55. Causes the second false *Demetrius's* son and his mother *Maria Anne* be thrust under the ice at *Occa* *ib.* Orders a third false *Demetrius* to be executed 56

Z z     *Moscow*

# I N D E X.

*Moscow* built by Czar *Alexander* I. 13. Is besieged and taken by the Cham of *Tartary* 18. Pillaged and burnt by the *Tartars* 26. Burnt by the *Peles*, who massacre vast numbers of the inhabitants 53. A great fire breaks out in it 163. The great bell there *ib.* Feasting and rejoicings there on the victory at *Pultawa* 310  
*Mydel*, General, undertakes to disturb the works at *St. Petersburg* and *Cronstat* I. 196. Makes another fruitless attempt on *St. Petersburg* 205  
*Moldavians* join the Czar II. 23

## N

*Narva* invested by Czar *Peter's* forces I. 144. A party from the garrison attack the Author's command *ib.* The trenches opened 148. The King of *Sweden* comes to its relief 149. Battle near it 150. Again besieged 189. One of the bastions falls down 187. Is taken by assault 189. List of the prisoners taken 191. Great quantities of artillery, ammunition, &c. found in it and *Ivanograd* 193  
*Natalia*, Princess, her character II. 288  
*Niesadt*, plenipotentiaries from the Czar and *Sweden* repair thither and begin their conferences II. 201. A treaty concluded 202.  
*Notteburgh* surrenders to the *Russians* I. 169. The articles of capitulation *ib.* Its name changed to *Sleutelburgh* 170

*Nosticz*, General, takes *Elbing* by surprize II. 9  
*Norris*, Sir John, arrives in the road of *Copenhagen* with a large fleet of ships under his convoy II. 77. Arrives in the *Sound* with a squadron of *British* men of war 161. Sails towards the *Swedish* ports 163. Receives a letter from Czar *Peter* enquiring into his designs *ib.* Joins the *Swedish* fleet *ib.* His letter to Prince *Dolgoruky* 187. Returns to *England* 194  
*Nyenchance* taken by the Czar I. 170. *St. Petersburg* built on it *ib.*  
*Nyslor* taken by the *Russians* II. 57

## O

Officers, foreign, in *Peter* the Great's service, their objections to the treaty concluded by Prince *Dolgoruky* at *Narva* I. 152. Shew their dissent thereto by quitting their commands and retiring in a body 153  
*Ogla*, Queen, revenges the death of her husband *Igor* I. 9. Is converted to the Christian faith 10  
*Ogilvie*, Marshal, carries on the siege of *Narva* I. 180. His stratagem 181. Alters the custom the *Russians* had of making their attacks in the night-time 184 and 188. Gives the Governor no time to repair the breaches 189. Enters the town *ib.* Summons *Ivanograd* 192. He, together with King *Augustus*, gets the the command of the army at *Grodno* 211. Sends a detach-

# I N D E X.

detachment under Major-general *Slough* to intercept a part of the King of *Sweden*'s baggage 215. A letter writ by him on this occasion 216. Other two letters on the same subject 218, 220. Demolishes the works at *Grodno* 221. Marches to the frontiers of *Russia* 222. Some account of him II. 283

*Oginsky Starosta*, made Great-general of *Lithuania* in room of Prince *Wiesnowitsky* I. 235

*Oswolod*, Czar, succeeds *Wolodimir* II. I. 12

*Ottoman Porte*, sends an ambassador to *Peter* the Great, to notify the new Sultan's accession to the throne I. 193. Sends an ambassador to the King of *Sweden* 259

*Ottoman* army marches against the *Russians* II. 26. Comes up with them at the *Pruth* 27. Is twice repulsed *ib.* The Grand Visier takes a bribe and concludes a treaty with the Czar 29. Is reflected upon for it 32

## P

*Patcul*, General, is arrested by order of King *Augustus* I. 223

*Peter* the Great born I. 64. Proclaimed Czar along with his elder brother *John* 79. Disapproves early the manner the Czars used to live in 83. Is in danger from the intrigues of his sister Princess *Sophia* 87. Marries the daughter of the Boyar *Theodore Abramowich Lapachin* 89. Discovers the designs of Prince *Basil Galitzen* against

him 90. He and his Empress retire to a convent with their friends *ib.* Is followed by General *Patrick Gordon* and all the foreign officers 91. Returns to *Moscow* *ib.* Punishes the rebels *ib.* Abolishes a cruel custom *ib.* Takes the sole government on himself 92. Comes to a good understanding with the Emperor of *China* 93. Sends a solemn embassy thither 94. Builds a fort at *Archangel* *ib.* Besieges *Asoph* 97. Raises the siege and returns to *Moscow* 102. Makes preparations to besiege *Asoph* again 104. Gets several officers, engineers and miners from the Emperor, &c. 105. Destroys the *Turkish* fleet in the *Black-sea* 106. Appoints a publick thanksgiving for the taking *Asoph* 110. Builds several forts on the *Black-sea* *ib.* Makes his triumphant entry into *Moscow* *ib.* A plot against his life discovered 111. His generosity to *Pouschin's* lady on that event 112. Sets out on his travels 113. Arrives at *Koningsbergh* *ib.* Is stopt from viewing the fortifications at *Riga* *ib.* Arrives at *Amsterdam* 114. Has an interview with King *William* at *Utrecht* *ib.* Enters into an alliance with the Emperor and *Venice* against the *Turks* 116. Arrives at *London* *ib.* Returns to *Holland* 117. His behaviour in a storm at sea 118. Visits the Queen of *Poland* *ib.* Arrives at *Vienna* *ib.* Pays a visit to the Emperor 119. Gets

# I N D E X.

notice of the revolt of the *Strelitzes* 120. Meets with King *Augustus* at *Reva* *ib.* Arrives at *Moscow* 121. Enters into a truce with the *Turks* 133. Makes preparations for a war with *Sweden* 138. Breaks the *Strelitzes* 139. The method he took to raise a new army *ib.* Sets about reforming his whole empire 141. Introduces trades and manufactures, &c 143. Proclaims war against *Sweden* 144. Causes General *Bruce* to be put under arrest *ib.* Comes to the siege of *Narva* 147. Goes to *Novogrod* to hasten supplies of ammunition and troops 148. His behaviour on hearing his troops were defeated at *Narva* 155. Takes measures for repairing his loss 156. Refuses to make peace with the King of *Sweden* unless he would restore the province of *Ingria* 161. The true cause of his declaring war against *Sweden* *ib.* Meets with King *Augustus* at *Birzen* 162. Endeavours to persuade the *Poles* to join in the war against *Sweden* 163. Sends an Ambassador to *Denmark* for the same purpose *ib.* Invites foreigners to enter into his army 165. Marches into *Ingria* *ib.* Makes presents to the officers and soldiers who had been wounded 169. Repairs the fortifications of *Notteburgh* 170. Takes *Nyenchanse* *ib.* Founds *St. Petersburg* on it *ib.* Builds the harbour of *Cronstat* 171. Alters the coin 172. Enters

*Moscow* in triumph 176. Exhorts the *Poles* to adhere to King *Augustus* 178. Makes a new alliance with him *ib.* Orders *Narva* and *Derpt* to be invested 179. Shuts up *Commodore Lefcher* in the river *Embach* 180. Enters *Derpt* and receives the submission of the inhabitants 186. Publishes a declaration there *ib.* Marches to *Narva* 187. Enters the town 189. Forbids all farther execution under pain of death *ib.* Causes put safeguards in all churches and principal places *ib.* Sets Colonel *Slepenback* at liberty 190. Punishes Baron *Horn* for his cruelty 191. Causes sing *Te deum* on taking the town *ib.* Institutes the order of knights of *St. Andrew* 192. Returns to *Moscow*, and exposes to his people the trophies of his campaign 196. Sends Marshal *Sheremetoff* to *Courland* 197. His saying on hearing of the battle of *Gemaurthoff* 202. Issues a manifesto in behalf of King *Augustus* *ib.* Takes *Courland* under his protection 205. Perplexes the deliberations of the dyet of *Warsaw* 206. Marches to *Grodno* 207. Is master of all *Lithuania* *ib.* Goes out to meet King *Augustus* 208. Enters into an alliance with the *Polish* senators 210. Hears of a revolt at *Astracan*, and sets out for *Moscow* 211. Goes on board his fleet near the island *Ratusary* 223; from thence to *Mobilow* *ib.* Sends Prince *Menzekoff*

# I N D E X.

zekoff with a detachment into Poland 226. Gives presents to the generals, &c. at the battle of *Calish* 229. Is displeased at King *Augustus's* conduct 230. Obligated to alter his measures by the unfaithful step of his ally 232. Meets with several of the Polish senators at *Zolkiew* 234. Endeavours to persuade them to declare both *Augustus* and *Stanislaus* incapable of possessing the throne 235. Sends Prince *Dolgoruky* to the council at *Limberg* 237. Goes himself thither with Prince *Menzekoff*, &c. 239. His declaration to the senators 241. Takes measures for protecting the dyet at *Lublin* 244. Prevails with the Pope not to acknowledge *Stanislaus* 248. Intreats Queen *Anne* and the States-general not to guarantee the treaty concluded between the King of *Sweden* and King *Augustus* 249. Publishes an universalia inviting the adherents of *Stanislaus* to the dyet of *Lublin* 250. Repairs thither 252. Refuses *Pr. Rogotky's* offer *ib.* His propositions to the dyet 253. Orders all the countries in *Poland* to be laid waste through which the King of *Sweden* was to pass 255. Goes to *St. Petersburg* 257. His answer when told that the *Swedes* were of opinion their King would finish the war by one decisive stroke 258. Orders troops to the *Turkish* frontiers 259. Sets out for *Moscow* *ib.* Punishes the ringleaders

of the rebellion at *Astracan* *ib.* Finishes the great Royal dispensary 260. Repairs to *Grodno* 261. Retires on the King of *Sweden's* forcing the bridge 261. Shuns coming to a battle I. 263. Falls ill 265. Recovers his health and takes a journey to *Moscow* 266. Joins his army after the battle of *Holowfin* 269. Makes no attempt to hinder the King of *Sweden* from crossing the *Borislhenes* 270. Is in no more pain about his enemies 272. Marches with a body of troops to prevent General *Levenhaupt's* joining the King of *Sweden* 273. Attacks *Levenhaupt*, and obliges him to retire leaving his provisions, ammunition, &c. 275. Sends a detachment in pursuit of him 276. Loses an opportunity 279. Makes *Scuropatky* Hettman in place of *Mazepa* 280. Sends troops into *Poland* 289. His troops successful in *Finland* 292. Marches with his whole army to the relief of *Pultawa* 296. Takes the command on himself at that battle 297. Gains a compleat victory 300. Requires the Grand Seignior to deliver up the King of *Sweden* and *Mazepa* 306. Causes the *Swedish* generals dine with him *ib.* His discourse with General *Renfild* 307. Enters into a new alliance with King *Augustus* and the King of *Denmark* *ib.* Publishes a manifesto in opposition to the King of *Sweden's* 308. His regard to the Duke of *Wirtemberg* *ib.*

# I N D E X.

ib. Deliberates in a great council of war on his future operations 310.

*Peter the Great* joins General *Goltz* at *Hyanow* II. 2. Meets with King *Augustus* at *Thorn* 3. Has an interview with the King of *Prussia* ib. Is waited on by Count *Fleming* ib. Marries his niece to the Duke of *Courland* 4. Invests *Riga* 5. His triumphal entry into *Moscow* 6. Renews the treaty with the *Turks* 7. Resolves to attack the *Swedes* in *Pomerania* 14. The Sultan breaks with him 22. He writes to the *Porte* ib. His letter not delivered ib. Marches to the frontiers of *Poland* 23, and towards the *Pruth* contrary to the advice of his generals 26. Repulses the *Turks* twice ib. Is in great anxiety 28. Bribes the prime Visier, who concludes a treaty with him 29. His great error in despising the *Turks* too much 30. Marches his army back into *Poland* 32. Marries his son the Czarowich, to the princess of *Wolfenbuttle* 34. Celebrates the festival of St. *Andrew* at *Riga* ib. Wants to be admitted among the Princes of the *German* empire, but is opposed 35. Renews the treaty with the Sultan 37. Withdraws his troops from *Poland* 40. Goes incognito to *Berlin*, and has an interview with the King of *Prussia* 41. Distributes money among the distressed inhabitants of *Altena* 49. Attacks *Fredericksbadt* in person 50. Takes

it, and greatly distresses *Steinbock* ib. Goes to *Hanover* 51. Makes a descent upon *Finland* ib. Defeats the *Swedes* at *Pulcona* 53. Attacks and beats the *Swedish* Admiral *Erenschield* 58. His speech to the old *Russian* gentry 59. His grandchild the Princess *Natalia* born 62. His great care to improve *St. Petersburg* 63. Punishes several great men for illegal practices 65. Makes an alliance with *Poland*, *Denmark* and *Prussia* against *Charles XII.* 68. Sends a body of troops into the *Ukraine* to observe the motions of the *Turks* 69. Sails with a large fleet towards the island of *Jutland* ib. Thence to the coast of *Sundermania*, where he causes the troops debark and plunder the country 70. Has a son born by the Empress *Katharine* 71. Sets out for *Dantzick* with the Empress *Katharine* 72. Marries his niece the Princess *Katharine* to the Duke of *Mechlinburgh* 73. Resolves to give him possession of *Wismar* ib. Goes to *Koningsberg* ib. Gives audience to the *Persian* Ambassador ib. Returns to *Dantzick* 74. Makes a demand for money upon the magistrates of *Dantzick* ib. Goes to *Stetin*, where he has a private conference with the King of *Prussia* ib. They both agree that it would be bad policy to assist the King of *Denmark* to make fresh conquests in *Sweden* 75. The source of the Czar's grudge at King

# I N D E X .

King *George I. ib.* The King of *Denmark* visits him at *Altena* *ib.* They concert measures to make a descent upon *Schonen*, order a large body of troops to the island of *Rugen* 76. Arrives with the Empress at *Lubeck* *ib.* Amuses himself with the *English* and *Dutch* fleets before *Copenhagen* 77. Suspend his design upon *Schonen* 78; which is ill taken by the King of *Denmark* 79. Marches his troops out of the *Danish* dominions *ib.* Has a private interview with the King of *Prussia* 80. Arrives at *Amsterdam* *ib.* How he spent his time in *Holland* 82. The Empress arrives at *Amsterdam* *ib.* Their majesties go to the *Hague* *ib.* Accused of a design in favour of the Chevalier de St. *George* 83; which he absolutely denies *ib.* Arrives at *Paris* 84. Leaves *France* 90. Arrives at *St. Petersburg*, where he finds that during his absence several abuses had crept into the government, and that the Czarowich had made an elopement 91. Examines the conduct of those in the administration during his absence 93. Punisheth abuses 94. Introduces several regulations *ib.* Hears of an insurrection of the *Cuban Tartars* *ib.* Takes measures to suppress it 95. Goes to *Moscow* *ib.* His letter to the Czarowich 96. See an account of his conduct in the process against this unhappy Prince from p. 96. to 145. Has a conference with Baron *Gortz*

about the state of affairs 147. Both he and the *Swedes* seem inclined to peace 148. Sends General *Bruce* and Baron *Gortz* plenipotentiaries to *Abo* *ib.* but the *Swedish* plenipotentiaries not appearing, he prepares for a descent on *Sweden* *ib.* Advances with his fleet towards the island of *Hango*, and from thence to *Abo* *ib.* The conference betwixt the plenipotentiaries transferred to *Allandt* *ib.* Plan agreed upon by *Gortz* and *Osterman* 150. Returns to *St. Petersburg*, and finds the Empress *Katharine* had brought him another daughter, the Princess *Natalia* 154. Threatens the *Swedes* with fire and sword if they declined entering into the plan of *Gortz* and *Osterman* 157. Is abandoned by his allies 158. Resolves upon an immediate descent on *Sweden*, and publishes a declaration containing his reasons *ib.* Falls upon *Sweden* and commits great depredations on the country 159. Sends *Osterman* with fresh proposals to the *Swedes* 163; which are rejected *ib.* The Queen of *Sweden* applies to him to cease hostilities 164. He is convinced of the disposition of the *British* court 165. Causes arrest the *British* merchants, and threatens to confiscate their effects 166. Publishes a memorial at *London* *ib.* which is answered by King *George* as King of *Britain* and elector of *Hanover* 167, 169. Establishes

# . I N D E X.

a council to have the oversight of the mines, founderies, &c. 178. From a political view he commends the medicinal springs at *Alonitz* *ib.* His great respect for the memory of Dr. *Areskine* his physician *ib.* Makes a new inquiry into the conduct of those in the administration of affairs. 171. His speech to the court appointed to try these matters 172. Sends an Ambassador into *Persia* 175. Brings a vast sum into his treasury by fining delinquents 176. Builds an observatory *ib.* Creates his jester a Count 177. Gives encouragement to the Roman catholic clergy, excepting jesuits *ib.* He erects several publick works 179. Carries on the war alone against *Sweden* *ib.* The dyet of *Poland* apply to him for reparation of damages sustained by his troops 180. He gives them good words *ib.* His resident ordered to leave the court of *Britain* 186. Rejects the mediation of *Great Britain* betwixt him and *Sweden* 189. The new King of *Sweden* sends a compliment to him 190. His Admiral attacks and beats the *Swedish* fleet off *Lumland* 191. Sends a compliment to the King of *Sweden* 193. The Duke of *Holstein* applies for his protection 195. Accepts the mediation of the court of *France* betwixt him and *Sweden* 197. Publishes a favourable edict for *Great Britain* 200. Concludes a peace with *Sweden*

202. Introduces new regulations 206. Takes the title of Emperor *ib.* His titles 209. His triumphant entry into *Moscow* 213. Publishes a declaration with regard to the succession 214. His expedition into *Persia* from p. 218. to 240. Causes rig out a large fleet 242. Conjectures about this armament *ib.* His demands on the King of *Denmark* 244. He embarks at *Revel* 245. The method he took to get a clear notion of shipping 246. Concludes an alliance with the Schah of *Persia* 249. Gives order for the coronation of the Empress *Katharine* 254. Sickness 255. Establishes a new academy *ib.* His speech to the foreign ministers *ib.* Sets out for *Moscow* 256. A design discovered against his life *ib.* The conspirators discovered and broke upon the wheel *ib.* Makes great preparations to assist the Schah 259. Abridges the revenues of the clergy 260. Catches a severe cold 261. Falls sick, names his successor, and dies *ib.* His character *ib.* Anecdotes of him 304  
*Peter*, Prince, the Czarowich's son born II. 71.  
*Peter*, Prince, the Czar's son born II. 71. Dies 177  
*Petersburgh* St., built I. 170. Description of it II. 173  
*Peterborough*, Earl of, endeavours to persuade the King of *Sweden* not to go to *Dresden* so ill attended I. 250

*Persian*

# I N D E X.

*Persian* Ambassador arrives at St. Petersburg II. 61.

*Pernaw* surrenders to the Czar II. 20

*Persia*, some account of affairs in that kingdom II. 218. Czar *Peter's* expedition thither 225, 232

Phylick, but of late introduced into *Russia* I. 7

Plague, rages at *Riga* II. 20

*Poland*, dyet of, apply to the Czar to withdraw his troops II. 154

*Polish* Ambassador arrives at St. Petersburg II. 185. His speech *ib.*

Primate of *Poland*, an unsteady truckling kind of man I. 177. Refuses to crown King *Stanislaus* 196

*Pultawa*, invested by the King of *Sweden* I. 295. Battle of 296. Order of the *Russian* and *Swedish* armies 297. The battle begins 300. *Voltaire* in a mistake *ibid.* note. *Swedes* intirely defeated *ib.* List of the killed, wounded and prisoners 301. An inscription on that occasion 310

## R

*Resan*, Governor of, his stratagem I. 19

*Ren*, General, defeats General *Slepenback* at *Reval* I. 182. Makes himself master of *Bautsk* 206. The castle of *Mittau* surrenders to him *ib.* Endeavours to lay *Dantzick* under contribution 247. Incommodes the King of *Sweden* on his march 272

VOL. II.

*Renschild*, General, defeats General *Shullembourg* at *Travenstadt* I. 218. Is taken prisoner at *Pultawa* 301. His answer to Czar *Peter* 306

*Rentzel*, General, makes his escape with 1500 *Russians*, which King *Augustus* had agreed should be delivered to the King of *Sweden* I. 245

*Revel* surrenders II. 20

Revenues of *Russia* scarce amount to two millions *Sterling* I. 172

*Riga* invested II. 5. The Governor publishes a declaration 6. Surrenders after great distress 19

*Romodanosky*, *Michael Gregorovich*, sent with a body of the *Strelitzes* to the frontiers of *Lithuania* I. 121. Sends notice to the regency of the *Strelitzes's* desertion and march to *Moscow* 122

*Rurick*, first sovereign of all *Russia* I. 9

*Russia*, its extent and boundaries I. 1. Its soil 3. Not two-thirds of it inhabited *ib.* Produce 4. Description of the inhabitants *ib.* Seasons 6. Has plenty of cattle, fowl and fishes 5. and 7. Is mostly plain except to the northward of *Archangel* 6. Origin of the empire 8. Account of its revenues, taxes, forces, &c. II. 298. Its coins, weights and measures 320

*Russians* converted to the Christian faith I. 10. Observe the rites of the *Greek* church 11. Are reformed by *Peter* the Great 141. The manner their marriages were used to be made

A a a

I.

# I N D E X.

**I. 142.** Did not relish Czar *Peter's* innovations 143. Were in a short time quite metamorphosed *ib.* Grow still more expert in war 174. Were in use of making their attacks in the night-time 185. Make great rejoicings after the battle of *Pultawa* 309

*Russian* army not near so numerous at the siege of *Narva* as some authors relate I. 151. The loss they sustained 154. Are defeated in *Courland* 195. Make dreadful ravages in *Poland* 256. Get advantages by sea 265. Resolve to wait the King of *Sweden* at *Holowfin* 267

## S

*Samoides*, their mock King dies II. 63  
*Sandomir*, confederacy of, supports King *Augustus* I. 178

*Schults*, Colonel, defeats the partisan *Smegilsky* at *Lubrinska* I. 245. Burns and destroys the lands belonging to the adherents of *Stanislaus* *ib.*

*Sheremetoff*, Marshal, takes several towns from the *Turks* I. 103. Marches into *Livonia* 164. Defeats several parties of *Swedes* *ib.* Defeats Major-general *Slepenback* at *Derpt* *ib.* Marches to *Pleskow* 165. Then to *Stagrilitz* 166. Defeats *Slepenback* again 167. Besieges *Notteburgh* 168; which surrenders to him 169. Carries on the siege of *Derpt* 180. Goes to *Courland* in quest of General *Levenhaupt* 197. Sends General *Bower* with a detachment

to *Mittau* 198. Attacks *Levenhaupt* at *Gemaurthoff* 199. Retires to his baggage 201. Marches to *Cracow* 244. Is joined by General *Rentzel* 245. Publishes a declaration in *Livonia* II. 5. Sent to reduce *Stralsund* 70. Dies 171. Account of his life and character 282

*Shein*, *Alexis Simeonowich*, made Generalissimo at the siege of *Asoph* I. 105. Goes thither to complete the fortifications 115. Marches from *Moscow* against the *Strelitzes* 123

*Sinaus*, *Rurick* and *Trenwor*, first founders of the *Russian* monarchy I. 8

*Siberia*, becomes subject to *Russia* I. 33

*Slepenback*, Major-general, is defeated by Marshal *Sheremetoff* at *Derpt* I. 164. Meditates revenge 165. Marches to *Stagrilitz* 166. Is defeated again 167. Retires under the canon of *Pernaw* *ib.* Defeated by General *Renn* at *Reval* 182. Attacks the right wing of the *Russians* at *Pultawa* 298. His detachment pursues the *Russians* too far, and is cut off from the main body of their army *ib.* Is taken prisoner with his whole body 299

*Smegilsky*, partisan, leaves *Augustus's* party and joins *Stanislaus* I. 236. Is defeated by Colonel *Schults* 245

*Sophia*, Princess, sister of the Czars *John* and *Peter*, is of an ambitious and masculine spirit I. 87. Designs to make Prince *Basil Galitzen*

# I N D E X.

- Galitzen* partner of her bed, and cut off the Czars *John* and *Peter* *ib.* Causes murder *Havansky* and his son 88. Is shut up in a convent 92. Is concerned in the revolt of the *Strelitzes* 130
- Stagirltz*, battle of, I. 167
- Stanislaus Leschinsky*, is elected King of *Poland* by the influence of the King of *Sweden* I. 195. His letter to King *Augustus* 232. Is congratulated by the *Ottoman Porte* 259. Is defeated by General *Goltz* 290. Marches back into *Great Poland* 291. Keeps himself concealed 311. Is made prisoner in *Turky* II. 2
- Starofla Grudzinsky*, attacks and gets an advantage over the *Russians* II. 45. Is defeated by General *Bower* 46
- Stenko Razin*, raises a rebellion I. 57. Seizes on *Astracan* 58; also on *Zaratow* and *Samara* *ib.* Repulsed at *Simboskoy* with considerable loss *ib.* Is abandoned by his friends 60. Broke on the wheel 61
- Stenbuck*, General, beats the *Danes* at *Gaddebusch* II. 42. Burns *Altena* 48. Surrenders at discretion 53. Dies *ib.*
- Stetin* surrenders to the *Russians* II. 54
- Stralsund* surrenders to the confederates II. 72
- Strelitzes*, their insurrection I. 69. They grow more insolent 75. Their bloody rage 77. Are at last pacified 82. Their pretence, and the true cause of their rebellion 83. They revolt again 122. March for *Moscow* *ib.* Surrender 128. Their motives for rebellion 129. Are punished 130. The whole body of them broke 139
- Story of Czar *John Basilwick* and the *French Ambassador* I. 36
- Sublicow*, Boyar, is Governor of *Ajoph* I. 131. Beats the *Tartars* *ib.*
- Swarts*, Colonel, suppresses an insurrection of the *Cuban Tartars* II. 71. In the utmost consternation 159
- Sweden*, King of, comes to the relief of *Narva* I. 149. Defeats the *Russians* 150. His oversight in allowing the *Russians* to return to their own country 155. Defeats the *Saxons* near *Riga* 158. Lays down the plan of dethroning King *Augustus* *ib.* Defeats King *Augustus* at *Clitchoff* 168. Imagines he would get the towns Czar *Peter* was daily taking from him restored with interest when he came to treat with him at *Moscow* 178. Procures the dyet of *Poland* to dethrone King *Augustus* and elect *Stanislaus* in his room 196. Loses an opportunity 203. Never called a council of war or took any advice 204. Continues in *Poland* undervaluing his enemies 205. At last sets out in quest of the *Russians* 211. Crosses the *Niemen* 213. Comes up before the lines at *Grodno* *ib.* He retires on finding the *Russians* so strongly intrenched

# I N D E X.

214. This the only time he ever came up with an enemy with a view to attack them without doing it *ib.* Enters Saxony 225. Raises great contributions there 231. Obliges King *Augustus* to congratulate King *Stanislaus* on his accession to the throne *ib.* Is flattered by the court of *France* 247. The Duke of *Marlbrough* pays him a visit 248. His extraordinary visit to King *Augustus* 256. His difficult march thro' *Poland* 258. Is congratulated on his victories by the *Ottoman Porte* 259. Passes the *Vistula* 260. Forces the pass at *Grodno* 261. Disperses his troops into winter quarters 263. Attacks the *Russian* lines at *Holowfin* 267. Finds the *Russians* much improved in the art of war 268. New errors in his conduct 269. Sends orders to General *Levenhaupt* to join him 270. Crosses the *Boristhenes* 271. Marches towards the *Ukraine* 273. Is disappointed of the reinforcement he expected from *Leventaupt* 278. Designs to cross the river *Disna* *ib.* His passage opposed by General *Gordon* *ib.* Crosses the *Disna* 279. Is joined by *Mazepa* 280. A reflection on his conduct 292. His army in great distress 293. Takes and demolishes *Voprutz* 294. Marches to *Pultawa* 295. Writes to *Stanislaus* to join him *ib.* Invests *Pultawa* 296. Attacks the Czar 298. Is defeated 301. The litter in which he was ob-

liged to ride on account of his wound found broken to pieces *ib.* Crosses the *Boristhenes* 303. The Governor of *Oczacow* makes difficulty of allowing him to cross the *Bog* 305. Is received by the *Bassia* of *Bender* with all possible respect 306. Publishes a manifesto inviting the *Cossacks* to break from the Czar 307. Is much mortified with the resolution of the *Divan* II. 24. His intrigues at the *Porte* *ib.* Arrives at the *Turkish* camp at the *Pruth*, but not till after the treaty with the Czar was concluded 30. Abuses the grand *Visier* *ib.* Forms new parties in *Turky* 35. 41. Is ordered to quit the *Grand Seigneur's* dominions 47; which he refuses to do *ib.* Arrives at *Stralsund* from *Turky* 67. Immediately sets about renewing the war with *Russia* *ib.* Leaves *Stralsund*, which surrenders two days after 72. Lays siege to *Fredrickshall*, where he is killed 155. His death causes a great change of affairs in the north *ib.*

*Swedes* possessed with the opinion that one of them was able to beat five *Russians* I. 165. Take umbrage at the building *St. Petersburgh* and *Cronstat* 171. Find they had taught the *Russians* the art of war 272. Their loss when attacked by the Czar at the river *Pronia* 277. Their miserable condition after the battle of *Pultawa* 305

*Sweden*

# I N D E X.

*Sweden* in the utmost consternation II. 159. Plundered and ravaged by the *Russians* 161, 162, 192, 201. Makes peace with *Russia* 185

## T

*Tartars* formerly made frequent incursions into *Russia* I. 3. Demand liberty from the *Turks* to renew their incursions 175. Without effect 176

*Teutonic* order extinguished in *Livonia* I. 24

*Theodore*, Czar, succeeds *John Basiliwick* II. I. 37. Dies without issue *ib.*

*Theodore* II. succeeds *Alexis* I. 66. Enters into an alliance with *Poland* against the *Turks* *ib.* Makes peace with the *Turks* 68. Marries a lady of *Polish* extraction, which offends the nobility 69. His second marriage *ib.* Dies without issue *ib.*

*Turks*, a body of them endeavour to force their way into *Asoph* I. 108. Desire peace 133

*Tossa*, a party of *Russians* defeated there by the *Swedes* II. 162

## U

*Ulrica*, Princess, sister to *Charles* XII. of *Sweden* succeeds him in the throne II. 156. She publishes a manifesto in answer to one published by the Czar 158. Resigns the crown in favours of the Prince of *Hesse Cassel* her husband 185

## V

*Veronitz*, the Czar forms a project of sending ships from

thence to the *Black-sea* I. 95

## W

*Warsaw*, confederacy of, dethrone King *Augustus* I. 195. Elect *Stanislaus Leschinsky* King of *Poland* *ib.* A great council held there II. 13

*Watrang*, the *Swedish* Admiral, gains some advantages on the coast of *Finland* II. 57

*Weid*, *Adam*, directs the mines at the siege of *Asoph* I. 101. Is obliged to abscond on account of his miscarriage *ib.* Is positive to submit to the King of *Sweden*'s terms at *Narva* 153. Is released in exchange for General *Marderfelt* 229

*Whiteworth* the *British* Ambassador gives satisfaction to the Czar for the affront his Ambassador had got at *London* II. 72

*Wiburgh* besieged II. 17. Surrenders *ib.* The garrison arrested *ib.* The Governor of it makes himself master of the island of *Malin* 57. Takes *Nyssot* *ib.*

*Wiesnowitzky*, Great-general of *Lithuania*, joins *Stanislaus* I. 235. Great part of his forces leave him and join *Oginzky* 236. Publishes an universalia in answer to one published by Czar *Peter* 251

*Wismar* receives a garrison of *Hanoverians* II. 75

*Wirtemberg*, Duke of, taken prisoner at the battle of *Pultawa* I. 301. His death *ib.* The Czar sends his heart to his mother *ib.* An inscription on the occasion 308 *Wolodimir*,

# I N D E X.

*Wolodimir*, marries *Anna* sister of  
*Basil* Emperor of *Greece* I. 10.  
 The *Russians* converted to the  
 Christian faith in his reign *ib.*  
 Removes his residence to *Pere-*  
*slaw* II. Divides the empire  
 among his ten sons *ib.* *Wolodi-*  
*mir* II. reunites the empire I. 12.

Z

*Zufky*, *Basil Iwonowich*, causes  
 murder the first false *Demetrius*  
 I. 48. Is proclaimed Czar  
 49. Disturbed by a second  
*Demetrius* *ib.* Deposed and  
 sent prisoner to *Sigismund*  
 52.

## Explanation of FOREIGN WORDS.

**B** OYAR, Lord.  
 Caviar, roe of sturgeon.  
 Copeck, coin = to a halfpenny  
 Sterling.  
 Hettman, General.

Ruble, coin worth about 4 s. 3d.  
 Sterling.  
 Spahis, *Asiatick* cavalry.  
 Werst, =  $\frac{2}{3}$  of a mile *English*.  
 Woywode, chief magistrate.

# F I N I S.

---

E R R A T A.

Page 196, 227, 238. Vol. I. for *Fineasky* read *Sineasky*.

---

## *Directions to the BOOKBINDER.*

Place the Head of **PETER** the **GREAT** front-  
 ing Vol. I. The Head of the **AUTHOR** front-  
 ing his Life. The Head of Prince **MENZEKOFF**  
 fronting Vol. II. The **MAP** of **RUSSIA** front-  
 ing the **HISTORY OF RUSSIA**, Vol. I. Book I.

**BOOKS** *printed and sold by F. DOUGLASS and W. MURRAY, at their Shops in the Broadgate, Aberdeen.*

**F**AMILIAR LETTERS on several important Subjects, by *James Howell*, Esq; Clerk of the Privy-Council to King *Charles I.*---These Letters are wrote from the Year 1618 to 1650, and contain a great many curious Particulars relating to the History of that Period. Price 3 s. bound in Calf.

Advice to a Daughter chiefly with Regard to Religion. Price 6 d.

The Life of God in the Soul of Man; or the Nature and Excellency of the Christian Religion: With Nine other Discourses on important Subjects, by *Henry Scougal*, A. M. To which is added, A Sermon preached at the Author's Funeral, by *George Gairden* D. D. Price bound 2 s. 6 d.

The Life of God in the Soul of Man. Price bound 8 d.

Short and plain Directions for the spending of one Day well. Price 1 d. stich'd, or 6 s the Hundred to those that give them away.

A Letter to Mr. *James Man*, on his late Performance against Mr. *Ruddiman*. Price 4 d.

The necessary Knowledge of the Lord's Supper, and the necessary Preparation for it, shewn  
The

from the Words of its Institution. Price 3 d. or  
one Guinea per Hundred.

The Gentle Shepherd, a pastoral Comedy.  
Price 6 d. fine, and 4 d. coarse Paper.

Cato, a Tragedy; by *Joseph Addison*, Esq;  
Price 6 d.

Essay on Man.----Ethic Epistles,----Epistles to  
Sundries, by Mr. *Pope*. Price 6 d. each.

Chevy-Chase and Hardyknute, with a Preface  
and Notes. Price 4 d.

The Psalm-Book. Price 1 s. fine, and 8 d.  
coarse Paper.

Translations and Paraphrases, in Verse, from  
different Passages of Holy Scripture, collected and  
prepared by a Committee of the General Assembly  
of the Church of *Scotland*, in a Size fit to be bound  
up with the Psalm-book. Price 4 d. fine, and 3 d.  
coarse Paper.

Prior's Poems, 2 Volumes. Price 5 s. bound  
in Calf and Letter'd.

c 2  
v 11

